



# STARTER

SECOND EDITION

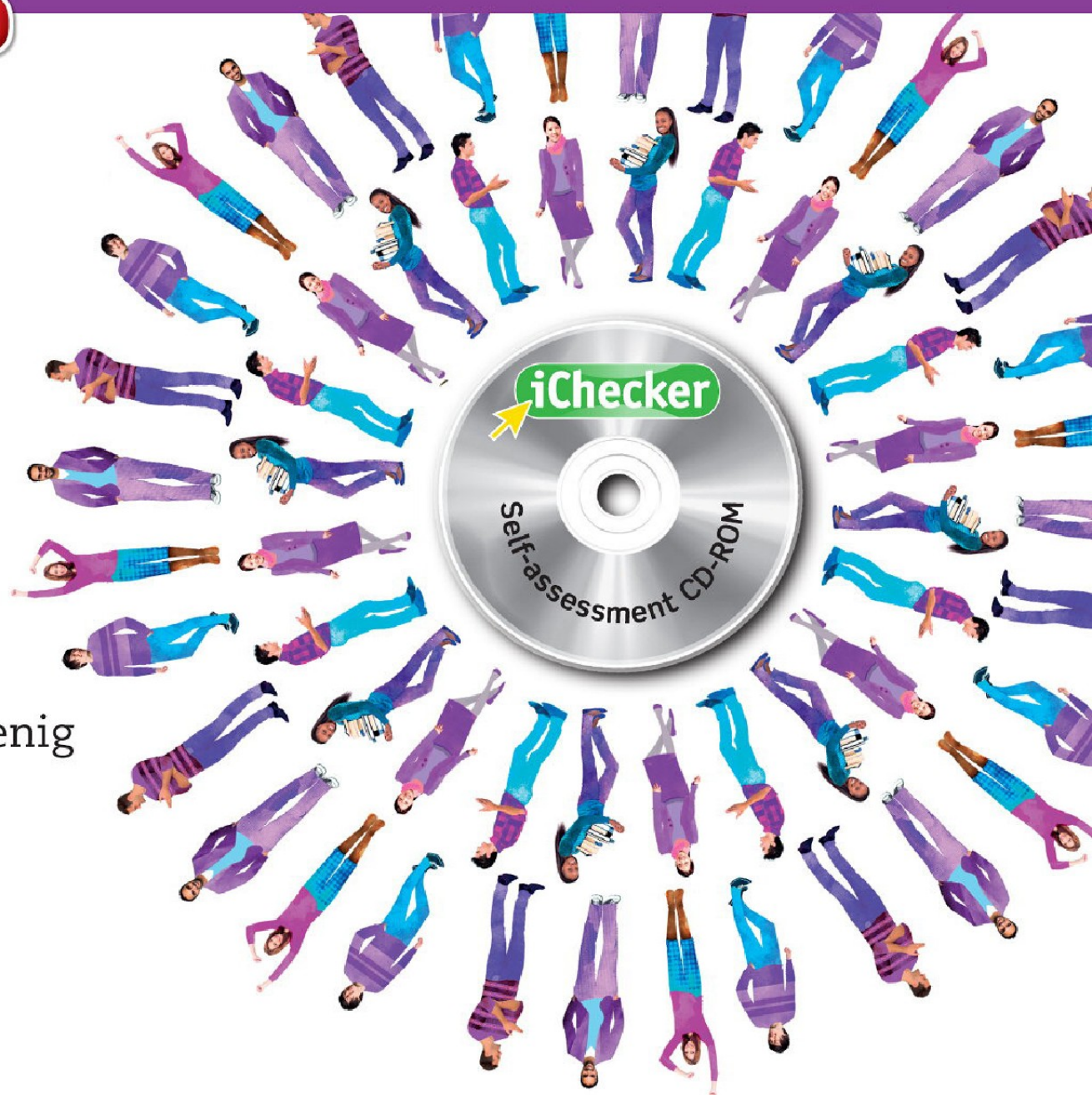
# American ENGLISH FILE

Online Practice

زبان امید  
[www.languagecentre.ir](http://www.languagecentre.ir)

Christina Latham-Koenig  
Clive Oxenden  
Mike Boyle

OXFORD



# STARTER

# American ENGLISH FILE

Christina Latham-Koenig  
Clive Oxenden  
Mike Boyle

Paul Seligson and Clive Oxenden are the original co-authors of  
*English File 1* and *English File 2*

**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

# Contents

	Grammar	Vocabulary	Pronunciation	
1				
4	A Hello!	verb be: I and you	numbers 0–10; days of the week	word stress; /h/, /aɪ/, and /i/
6	B Where are you from?	verb be: he, she, it	countries	sentence stress; /ɪ/, /oʊ/, and /ɛ/
8	PRACTICAL ENGLISH How do you spell it? 🎬 People on the street			
2				
10	A We're Canadian	verb be: we, you, they	nationalities	word stress; /ʃ / and /tʃ/
12	B What's his number?	Wh- and How questions with be	numbers 11–100; personal information	saying phone numbers; sentence stress
14	REVIEW AND CHECK 1&2 🎬 Short movies Friends			
3				
16	A What's in your bag?	a / an; singular and plural nouns	small things	/z/ and /s/; plural endings
18	B Is that a hat?	this / that / these / those	more small things	/ð/ and /æ/
20	PRACTICAL ENGLISH How much is it? 🎬 People on the street			
4				
22	A Family and friends	possessive adjectives; possessive s	people and family	/ə/, /ɪ/, and /ər/
24	B That's a cool car!	adjectives	colors and common adjectives	/ɜ/, /aɪ/, and /ɔɪ/
26	REVIEW AND CHECK 3&4 🎬 Short movies A souvenir shop			



## Grammar

## Vocabulary

## Pronunciation

### 5

28	<b>A</b> A bad hair day	simple present: <i>I</i> and <i>you</i>	common verbs 1	/h/, /w/, and /v/; linking
30	<b>B</b> What do you have for breakfast?	simple present: <i>we</i> , <i>you</i> , <i>they</i> ; <i>Wh</i> -questions	food and drink	word stress; /tʃ/, /dʒ/, and /g/
32	PRACTICAL ENGLISH What time is it? 🎥 People on the street			

### 6

34	<b>A</b> He speaks English at work	simple present: <i>he</i> , <i>she</i> , <i>it</i>	jobs and places of work	third person -s; word and sentence stress
36	<b>B</b> Do you like mornings?	adverbs of frequency	a typical day	sentence stress
38	REVIEW AND CHECK 5&6 🎥 Short movies <i>The life of a chef</i>			

76 Communication

84 Writing

86 Listening

92 Grammar Bank

116 Vocabulary Bank

132 Sound Bank

# Contents

	Grammar	Vocabulary	Pronunciation
<b>7</b>			
40	<b>A</b> Life at the end of the world <i>word order in questions</i>	common verbs 2	/ɛr/, /ɑ/, /aʊ/, and /y/
42	<b>B</b> You can't park here <i>can / can't</i>	common verbs 2	/æ/ and /ə/; sentence rhythm
44	PRACTICAL ENGLISH What's the date today?  People on the street		
<b>8</b>			
46	<b>A</b> What are they doing? <i>present continuous</i>	verb phrases	/ʊ/, /u/, and /ɪ/
48	<b>B</b> Today is different <i>present continuous or simple present?</i>	the weather	/ɔ/, /oʊ/, and /et/
50	REVIEW AND CHECK 7&8  Short movies <i>A day off</i>		
<b>9</b>			
52	<b>A</b> In the jungle in Guatemala <i>there is / there are</i>	hotels; <i>in, on, under</i>	/ɛr/, /ɪr/, and /ɔr/
54	<b>B</b> Before they were stars... <i>simple past: be</i>	<i>in, at, on</i> : places	/ɔr/ and <i>was / were</i>
56	PRACTICAL ENGLISH Is there a bank near here?  People on the street		
<b>10</b>			
58	<b>A</b> It changed my life <i>simple past: regular verbs</i>	common verbs 3	regular simple past endings
60	<b>B</b> What did you do? <i>simple past: do, get, go, have</i>	daily routine verbs; irregular verbs	sentence stress
62	REVIEW AND CHECK 9&10  Short movies <i>An interesting hotel</i>		



## Grammar

## Vocabulary

## Pronunciation

### 11

- 64 **A** What do you think of it? **object pronouns: *me, him, etc.*** opinion words strong stress
- 66 **B** Strangers on a train **simple past: more irregular verbs** common verbs 3; irregular verbs silent consonants
- 68 **PRACTICAL ENGLISH** Would you like a coffee? People on the street

### 12

- 70 **A** Trip of a lifetime **future: *be going to*** future time expressions sentence stress
- 72 **B** From start to finish **review of present, past, and future** review of verb collocations review of sounds
- 74 **REVIEW AND CHECK 11&12** Short movies *Trip of a lifetime*

76 Communication

84 Writing

86 Listening

92 Grammar Bank

116 Vocabulary Bank

132 Sound Bank

Hello, I'm Henry.  
What's your name?

I'm Lisa.

# 1A Hello!

## 1 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a **1 2** Listen and repeat.

**Lisa** Hello, I'm Lisa Silva.  
**Henry** Hi, I'm Henry Green.  
Nice to meet you.  
**Lisa** Nice to meet you!

b In pairs, practice the dialogue.

c Now say who you are.

Hello, I'm \_\_\_\_\_.

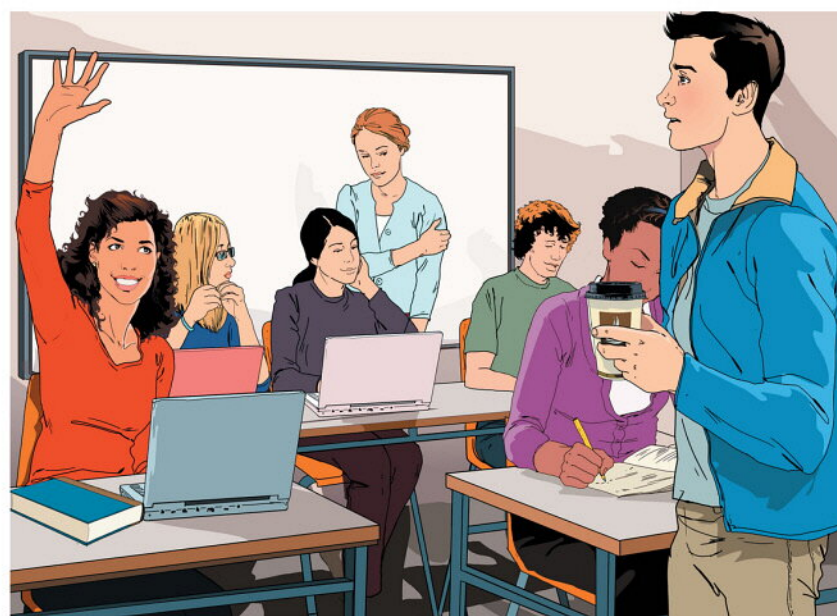
Hi, I'm \_\_\_\_\_. Nice to meet you.

Nice to meet you!

d **1 3** Read and listen.



1 **Lisa** Are you in number 2?  
**Henry** Yes, I am. Are you in number 1?  
**Lisa** No, I'm not. I'm in number 3.  
See you soon!  
**Henry** Goodbye!



2 **Lisa** Hi, Henry! You're in my class!  
**Henry** Hello. Sorry, what's your name?  
**Lisa** I'm Lisa. Lisa Silva.  
**Henry** Excuse me?  
**Lisa** Lisa Silva.  
**Henry** Oh, right.

e **1 4** Listen and repeat dialogue 1. In pairs, practice the dialogue.

f **1 5** Listen and repeat dialogue 2. In pairs, practice the dialogue.

## 2 GRAMMAR verb *be*: I and you

- a Look at dialogues 1 and 2 in **1d** on page 4.  
Write the contractions.

I'm = I am  
\_\_\_\_\_ = I am not  
\_\_\_\_\_ = You are

- b ➤ **p.92 Grammar Bank 1A.** Learn more about the verb *be*:  
*I* and *you*, and practice it.

- c **1 7** Listen and say the contractions.

))) You are ( You're

## 3 VOCABULARY numbers 0–10

- a Look. What are the numbers?



- b ➤ **p.116 Vocabulary Bank Numbers; days of the week.**  
Do part 1.

- c Count around the class from 0 to 10 and then from 10 to 0.

- d **1 9** Listen and say the next number.

))) one, two ( three

## 4 PRONUNCIATION

word stress; /h/, /aɪ/, and /i/



### Word stress




In English, stressed syllables are longer and louder.

li|sten re|peat

- a **1 10** Listen and repeat the words.  
Underline the stressed syllable.

- 1 he|llo
- 2 num|ber
- 3 ex|cuse
- 4 good|bye
- 5 pho|to
- 6 co|ffee

- b **1 11** Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

	house	hi hello Henry here
	bike	I hi nice five
	tree	three meet Lisa Henry

- c **1 12** Listen. Practice the sentences.

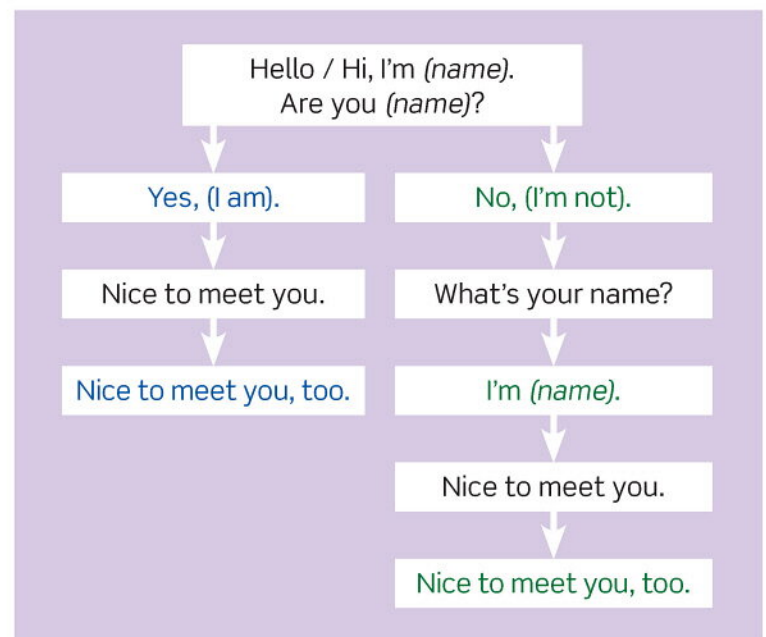
Hello, Henry here.

Hi! I'm nice.

Meet Henry Green at three.

## 5 SPEAKING

Practice with other students.



## 6 VOCABULARY days of the week

- a ➤ **p.116 Vocabulary Bank Numbers; days of the week.** Do part 3.

- b **1 14** Listen and say the next day.

))) Thursday, Friday ( Saturday

- c Practice with other students.

Bye!  
See you Wednesday!  
See you tomorrow!  
Goodbye!

# 1B Where are you from?

## 1 VOCABULARY countries

- a **1 15** Listen. Match the music and the countries.

- ☐ Brazil
- ☐ China
- ☐ Mexico
- ☐ Spain
- ☐ the United States

- b **1 16** Listen and check.

- c **p.117 Vocabulary Bank Countries and nationalities.** Do part 1.

- d **1 18** Listen and repeat the dialogue.

A Where are you from?

B I'm from Peru.

A Where in Peru?

B I'm from Lima.

- e Practice the dialogue with your country and city.

## 2 GRAMMAR

verb be: he, she, it

- a Look at the picture.  
Where is Adele from?  
Where is Justin Bieber from?

- b **1 19** Listen and complete 1–3 with countries.

A Where's she from?

B She's from <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

A Is he from <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, too?

B No, he isn't. He's from <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

A Is the concert tomorrow?

B Yes, it is. It's at seven.

A Let's go!

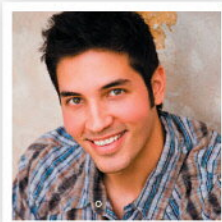
- c **1 20** Listen and repeat.

- d In pairs, practice the dialogue.



e Match the words and pictures.

she it he



1 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_

f ► p.92 Grammar Bank 1B. Learn more about the verb *be*: *he, she, it* and practice it.

g Write sentences and questions.

- 1 / she / Brazil? No, / *Is she from Brazil? No, she isn't.*
- 2 It / Peru. *It's from Peru.*
- 3 She / Korea. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 / he / Spain? Yes, / \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 / she / Mexico? No, / \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Where / he from? \_\_\_\_\_  
He / from Vietnam. \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 PRONUNCIATION

sentence stress; /ɪ/, /oʊ/, and /ε/



#### Sentence stress

In sentences we stress the important words.




Where is he **from**? He's from **Canada**.

a 1 22))) Listen and repeat the questions and answers. Copy the **rhythm**.

- 1 A **Where** are you **from**?  
B I'm from **England**.
- 2 A Is **she** from **China**?  
B No, she **isn't**.

b 1 23))) Listen and repeat the sentences in 2g.

c 1 24))) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

	fish	it six isn't Brazil England
	phone	hello no photo go
	egg	Mexico seven let's ten

d 1 25))) Listen. Practice the sentences.

**It's six** in Mexico.

Hello! Let's **go**!

Adele's concert is at **seven**.

### 4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 1 26))) Listen. Can you hear the difference?

- 1 a Is **he** from Japan?  
b Is **she** from Japan?
- 2 a **She's** from Canada.  
b **He's** from Canada.
- 3 a Where's **he** from?  
b Where's **she** from?
- 4 a **It's** from Portugal.  
b **He's** from Portugal.
- 5 a **She's** in my class.  
b **He's** in my class.
- 6 a Where is **he**?  
b Where is **she**?

b 1 27))) Listen and check (✓) the sentence you hear in a.

c Practice saying sentences a and b.

d Look at the photos. Guess the countries. Then go to page 79 and check your answers.

Is he from China?

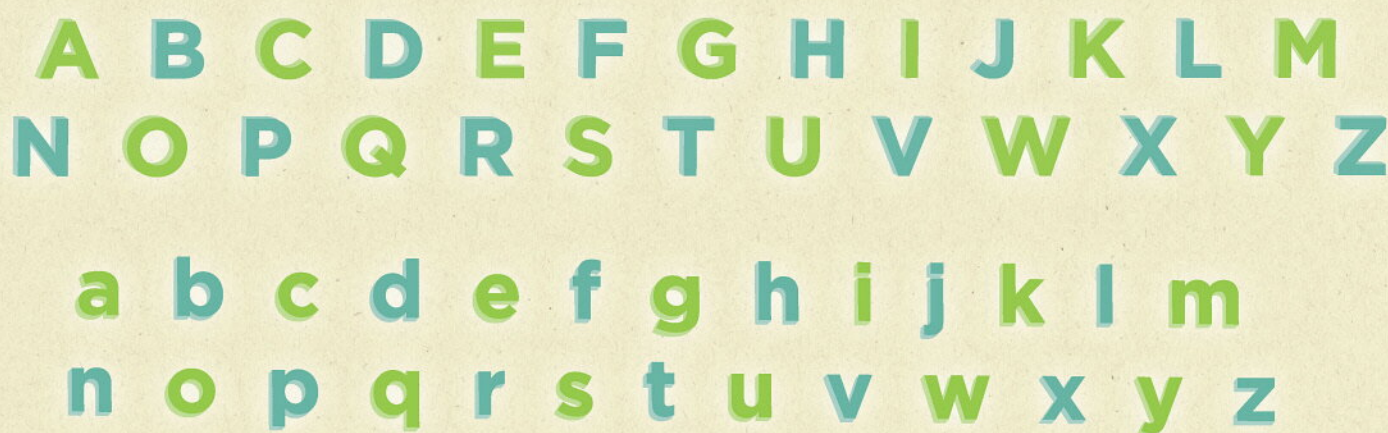
**Famous singers in  
their countries –  
but where are they from?**



e ► Communication Guess the countries






A p.76 B p.78.

# Practical English How do you spell it?



## 1 THE ALPHABET

- a (1 28))) Listen to the alphabet and repeat.
- b (1 29))) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 train	 tree	 egg	 bike	 phone	 boot	 car
A	B	F	I	O	Q	R
H	C	L	Y		U	
J	D	M			W	
K	E	N				
	G	S				
	P	X				
	T					
	V					
	Z					

- c (1 30))) Listen and repeat the letters.
- d (1 31))) Listen. Can you hear the difference?
- |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| 1 M N | 4 G J | 7 U W |
| 2 B P | 5 E I | 8 B V |
| 3 K Q | 6 Y I | 9 E A |
- e (1 32))) Listen. Circle the letter you hear in d.

- f (1 33))) Listen and number the pictures.

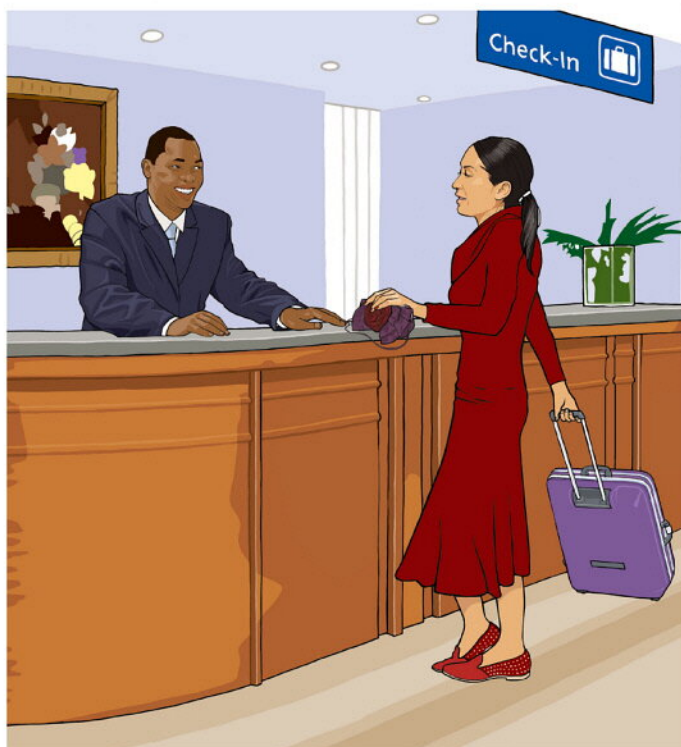


- g Listen again and write the letters. Practice saying them.
- h How do you spell these names?

Jenny Steve Liz Max Becky White Pedro Gomez

## 2 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 1 34))) Listen and order the sentences.



- ☐ F-L-O-R-E-S.
- ☐ Hello. I'm Eva Flores. I have a reservation.
- ☐ Excuse me?
- ☐ How do you spell your last name?
- ☐ Thank you.
- ☐ Good morning.
- ☒ 6 F-L-O-R-E-S.

### Names

**first** name = e.g., Brad, Angelina  
**last** name / **family** name = e.g., Pitt, Jolie

b 1 35))) Listen and repeat the dialogue.

c In pairs, role-play the dialogue. Use your first and last name. Use *Good morning*, *Good afternoon*, and *Good evening*.

### Greetings

Good morning → 12:00  
 Good afternoon 12:00 → 6:00 p.m.  
 Good evening 6:00 p.m. →

d ► **Communication Game: Hit the ships**  
 A p.76 B p.78.

## 3 VIDEO PEOPLE ON THE STREET

What's your name?  
 How do you spell it?  
 Where are you from?



a 1 36))) Watch or listen to the man.  
 What's his name?

His name's \_\_\_\_\_.

b 1 37))) Watch or listen. Where's he from?

He's from \_\_\_\_\_.

c 1 38))) Watch or listen to three more people.  
 Complete the sentences with their information.



1 Her name's \_\_\_\_\_.

2 She's from \_\_\_\_\_.



3 His name's \_\_\_\_\_.

4 He's from \_\_\_\_\_.



5 Her name's \_\_\_\_\_.

6 She's from \_\_\_\_\_.

d In pairs, ask and answer the questions in the box.

## 4 VOCABULARY classroom language

a ► p.118 **Vocabulary Bank** *The classroom*. Do part 1.

b In pairs, point to things in the classroom. Your partner says the word.

What is it? It's the board.

c ► p.118 **Vocabulary Bank** *The classroom*. Do part 2.

d 1 41))) Listen and complete the conversations.

- |   |         |                                         |
|---|---------|-----------------------------------------|
| 1 | Teacher | _____ your books, please. _____ page 7. |
|   | Student | Excuse me? Can you _____ that, please?  |
|   | Teacher | Go to page 7.                           |
| 2 | Student | What's <i>livro</i> in _____?           |
|   | Teacher | Book.                                   |
| 3 | Student | Excuse me. _____ "hotel"?               |
|   | Teacher | H - O - T - E - L.                      |

e In pairs, practice the dialogues in d.

f 1 42))) Listen and do the actions.

# 2A We're Canadian

## 1 VOCABULARY nationalities

a Where are they from? Complete the sentences with a country.



1

I'm Japanese.

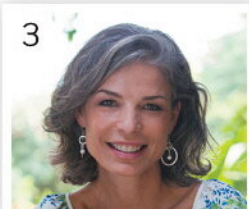
She's from \_\_\_\_\_.



2

I'm Canadian.

He's from \_\_\_\_\_.



3

I'm Mexican.

She's from \_\_\_\_\_.

b ► p.117 Vocabulary Bank Countries and nationalities. Do part 2.

c 1 44))) Listen. Say the nationality.  
 ))) I'm from Spain. (She's Spanish.

## 2 PRONUNCIATION

word stress; /f/ and /tʃ/

a 1 45))) The **same** stress or **different** stress? Listen and underline the stressed syllable. Write **S** or **D**.

- |             |               |          |
|-------------|---------------|----------|
| 1 Bra zil   | Bra zil ian   | <u>S</u> |
| 2 Chi na    | Chi nese      | <u>D</u> |
| 3 En gland  | En glish      | _____    |
| 4 Ca na da  | Ca na di an   | _____    |
| 5 Pe ru     | Pe ru vi an   | _____    |
| 6 Mex i co  | Mex i can     | _____    |
| 7 Ja pan    | Ja pa nese    | _____    |
| 8 Vi et nam | Vi et na nese | _____    |

b Listen again and repeat.

c 1 46))) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

	shower	she	Spanish	English	vacation
	chess	teacher	chair	China	Portugal

d 1 47))) Listen. Practice the sentences.

She's Spanish. She's on vacation. He's a Chinese teacher in Portugal.

## 3 LISTENING & READING

a 1 48))) Listen and number the pictures 1–3.

- |   |       |                                                                  |
|---|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Liz   | Excuse me. Are these seats free?                                 |
|   | Jenny | Yes, they are. Please sit down.                                  |
|   | Liz   | Thanks!                                                          |
| 2 | Max   | I'm Max, and she's Liz. We're Canadian.                          |
|   | Steve | Are you on vacation?                                             |
|   | Max   | Yes, we are. How about you?                                      |
|   | Steve | We aren't on vacation. We're students.                           |
| 3 | Liz   | Are you American?                                                |
|   | Jenny | No, we aren't. We aren't from the US.                            |
|   | Liz   | Oh. Are you from Japan?                                          |
|   | Jenny | No, we aren't.                                                   |
|   | Liz   | You aren't American and you aren't Japanese. Where are you from? |
|   | Jenny | We're from Canada, too!                                          |



b Listen again and read the dialogues. Then mark the sentences ✓ (right) or ✗ (wrong).

- Max and Liz are American. ✗
- Max and Liz are on vacation.
- Steve and Jenny aren't on vacation.
- Steve and Jenny are teachers.
- Steve and Jenny aren't American.
- Steve and Jenny are Japanese.

c Correct the wrong sentences.  
 Max and Liz are Canadian.

d 1 49))) Listen and repeat the dialogues.

## 4 GRAMMAR verb be: we, you, they

- a Read the dialogues in 3 on page 10 again. Complete the chart.

+		-
We're	We are	
You're	You are	
They're		They aren't

- b ► p.94 Grammar Bank 2A. Learn more about the verb be: we, you, they, and practice it.

- c 1 51 ))) Listen. Say the question.

))) You're Peruvian. Are you Peruvian?



## 5 SPEAKING

Are the nationalities right or wrong? Ask and answer questions in pairs. Correct the wrong nationalities. Then go to page 79 and check your answers.

Is Adele American? No, she isn't. She's English.



Adele / American



Gisele Bündchen / Spanish



tacos / Peruvian



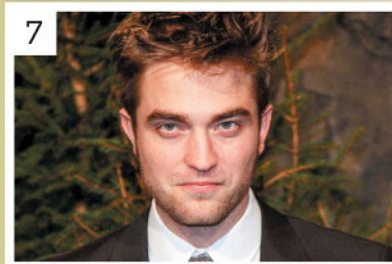
bánh mì / ban mi / sandwiches / Vietnamese



Cristiano Ronaldo / Brazilian



Lenovo / American



Robert Pattinson / Canadian



Samsung / Japanese



Land Rover / British



Lucy Liu / Chinese

# 2B What's his number?

## 1 LISTENING

- a **1 52** Listen to two dialogues. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

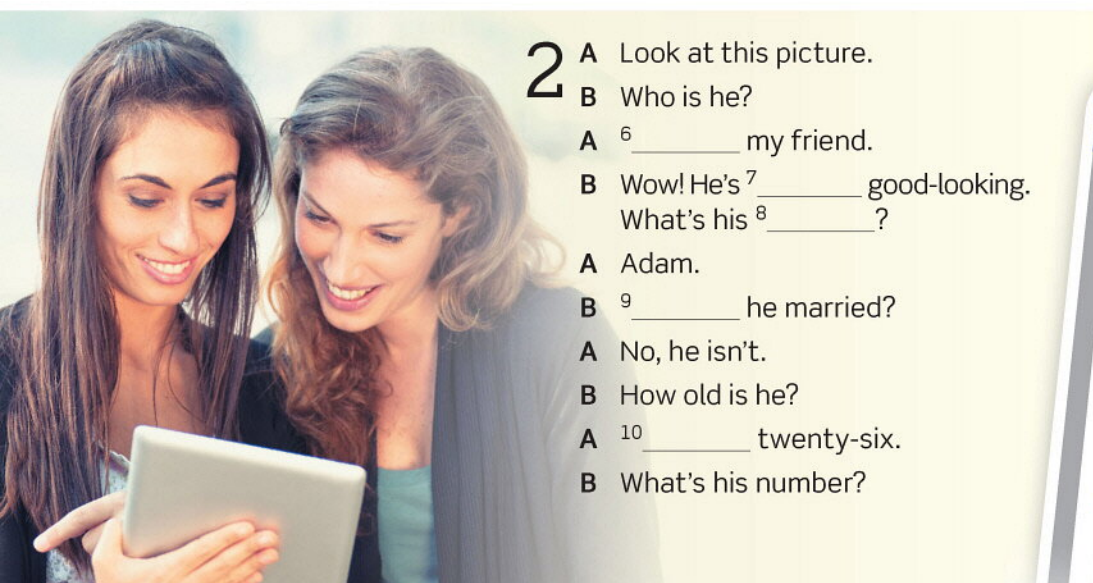
**Dialogue 1** Tom is on State Street.

**Dialogue 2** Adam is 25.

- b Listen again and read. Complete the dialogues.



- 1** A <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, Bob. Where are you?  
 B Hello, Tom. <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in my car.  
 Uh, what's your address?  
 A It's 503 State <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
 B <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ me?  
 A 503 State Street.  
 B Oh. It <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ 503 Lake Street.  
 A No, it isn't. Are you lost?  
 B Yes, I am.



- 2** A Look at this picture.  
 B Who is he?  
 A <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ my friend.  
 B Wow! He's <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ good-looking.  
 What's his <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?  
 A Adam.  
 B <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ he married?  
 A No, he isn't.  
 B How old is he?  
 A <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ twenty-six.  
 B What's his number?

- c **1 53** Listen and repeat the dialogues.

- d Practice them with a partner.

## 2 GRAMMAR

*Wh- and How questions with be*

- a Look at the dialogues in 1 again. Complete the questions.

Where are you?  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 's your address?  
 \_\_\_\_\_ is he?  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 's his name?  
 \_\_\_\_\_ old is he?  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 's his number?

- b **p.94 Grammar Bank 2B.** Learn more about *Wh-* and *How* questions with *be*, and practice them.

- c Match the questions and answers.

- |                                                    |                   |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> How are you? | a Torres.         |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> How old is he?          | b Fine, thanks.   |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Who's John?             | c Peru.           |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> What's your last name?  | d Tomorrow.       |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Where are you from?     | e He's my friend. |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> When's the concert?     | f He's nine.      |

- d **1 55** Listen and repeat the questions and answers.

- e Practice the questions and answers with a partner.



### 3 VOCABULARY numbers 11–100

- a ➤ **p.116 Vocabulary Bank** *Numbers; days of the week 11–100*. Do part 2.
- b Work in groups. How old are you?  
Say the ages of the people in your group.

*I'm 17. Marco's 17. I'm 24.  
Carmen's 24. Marco's 17. I'm 32.*

#### Ages

He's 20. OR He's 20 years old.

NOT He's 20-years. He has 20-years.

### 4 LISTENING

- a **1 57** Listen. Can you hear the difference?

- |        |      |
|--------|------|
| 1 a 13 | b 30 |
| 2 a 14 | b 40 |
| 3 a 15 | b 50 |
| 4 a 16 | b 60 |
| 5 a 17 | b 70 |
| 6 a 18 | b 80 |
| 7 a 19 | b 90 |

- b **1 58** Listen and circle a or b. Then practice saying all the numbers.

- c **1 59** Listen to the conversations. Number the questions 1–5.

- ☐ Who's Sarah?
- ☐ How are you?
- ☐ What's your last name?
- ☐ How old are you?
- ☐ How old is he?

- d Listen again and circle the answers to the questions.

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1 a 18        | b 80         |
| 2 a 25        | b 29         |
| 3 a Thomas    | b Thompson   |
| 4 a my friend | b my teacher |
| 5 a OK        | b good       |

### 5 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

saying phone numbers; sentence stress

- a **1 60** Listen and repeat the phone number.  
Make your voice go up and down.

*212 568 - 9403*

#### Phone numbers

0 = oh (or zero)

- b **1 61** Practice saying these phone numbers.  
Listen and check.

- 1 608-5713
- 2 845-7902
- 3 231 504-0206

- c **1 62** Listen and repeat questions 1–8. Stress the words in **bold**.

- 1 **What's** your **name**? **How** do you **spell** it?
- 2 **What's** your **address**?
- 3 **What's** your **zip code**?
- 4 **How old** are you?
- 5 Are you **married**?
- 6 **What's** your **home phone number**?
- 7 **What's** your **cell phone number**?
- 8 **What's** your **email**?

- d Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

- e ➤ **p.84 Writing** *Completing a form*.  
Complete an online application form.

- f ➤ **Communication** *Personal information*  
A p.77 B p.79



# 1&2 Review and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a or b.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ you from Peru?  
a Are b Is
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ Lisa. I'm Marisa.  
a Am not b I'm not
- 3 Hi, Tom! \_\_\_\_\_ in my class.  
a You b You're
- 4 **A** \_\_\_\_\_ from?  
**B** I'm from Saudi Arabia.  
a Where you are  
b Where are you
- 5 They \_\_\_\_\_ Portuguese.  
They're Brazilian.  
a aren't b not
- 6 **A** Are you from Japan?  
**B** No, \_\_\_\_\_ from Korea.  
a we're b are
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ London in England?  
a Are b Is
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ from Vietnam.  
We're from China.  
a We not b We aren't
- 9 **A** Are they Mexican?  
**B** No, \_\_\_\_\_.  
a they aren't b they are
- 10 Lisa and Jenny are from Toronto.  
\_\_\_\_\_ Canadian.  
a She's b They're
- 11 You and I are in English class.  
\_\_\_\_\_ students.  
a We're b You're
- 12 **A** Are you in class 2?  
**B** No, \_\_\_\_\_.  
a I not b I'm not
- 13 She \_\_\_\_\_ from New York.  
She's from Boston.  
a aren't b isn't
- 14 **A** \_\_\_\_\_ old are you?  
**B** I'm 19.  
a What b How
- 15 **A** \_\_\_\_\_ address?  
**B** It's 304 Main Street.  
a What your b What's your

## VOCABULARY

a Complete the chart.

Country	Nationality
China _____	Chinese
Mexico _____	1 _____
2 _____	Vietnamese
the United States _____	3 _____
4 _____	English
Brazil _____	5 _____
6 _____	Saudi

b Write the next number.

one, two, *three*

- 1 five, six, \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 two, one, \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 fifteen, fourteen, \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 nineteen, twenty, \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 sixty-five, sixty-four, \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 ninety-eight, ninety-nine, \_\_\_\_\_

c Complete the phrases.

Where are you *from*?

- 1 **A** **G**\_\_\_\_\_ morning. I'm Tom Diaz. I **h**\_\_\_\_\_ a reservation.  
**B** Excuse **m**\_\_\_\_\_, how do you **sp**\_\_\_\_\_ your last name?  
**A** D-I-A-Z.
- 2 **A** Excuse me, **wh**\_\_\_\_\_ *livro* in English? **B** Book.  
**A** Can you **r**\_\_\_\_\_ that, please? **B** Yes. Book.
- 3 **A** What's your phone **n**\_\_\_\_\_? **B** 555-8942.  
**A** Thanks. What's your **em**\_\_\_\_\_? **B** It's tom@geemail.com.

d Write the things in the classroom.



- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_

## PRONUNCIATION

a Can you remember these words and sounds?

vowels



consonants



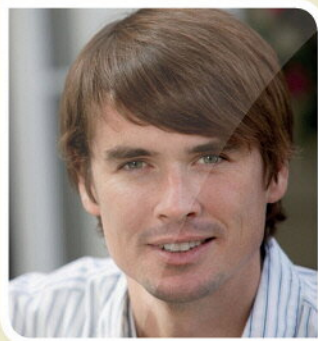
b ► **p.132-134 Sound Bank.** Check the words and sounds, and practice saying the example words.

c Underline the stressed syllable.

- 1 Ca|na|di|an
- 2 Chi|nese
- 3 ex|cuse
- 4 pho|to
- 5 Por|tu|guese

## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

Read and complete the chart for Mark, Bianca, and Linh. Then add information about you.



I'm Mark Davis.  
I'm twenty eight.  
I'm from Seattle in the US.



I'm Bianca Costa.  
I'm sixteen. I'm from Rio in Brazil.



I'm Linh Tran.  
I'm eighteen.  
I'm from Hanoi in Vietnam.

First name	Family name	Age	Nationality
Mark			
Bianca			
Linh			
You			

## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

1 63))) Listen and choose the right answer.

- 1 a Jenny's American.  
b Jenny's English.
- 2 a Dan's in room 40.  
b Dan's in room 14.
- 3 a He's Brian.  
b He's Bryan.
- 4 a Lisa is at 24 Green Street.  
b Lisa is at 224 Green Street.
- 5 a Jun is from China.  
b Jun is from Korea.
- 6 a Liz is 13.  
b Liz is 30.
- 7 a He's John Reid.  
b He's John Read.
- 8 a Chris is a man.  
b Chris is a woman.
- 9 a Tom is married.  
b Tom isn't married.
- 10 a The exercise is on page 17.  
b The exercise is on page 70.

## CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Check (✓) the boxes.

Can you...?

- |                                                                         |                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 say your name and where you are from                                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 2 ask where other people are from                                       | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 3 spell your name                                                       | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 4 count from 0 to 100                                                   | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 5 ask for and give personal information, e.g., name, address, age, etc. | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 6 say your phone number                                                 | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 7 use and understand classroom language                                 | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 8 check in at a hotel                                                   | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |



Short movies **Friends**

Watch and enjoy the movie.

What are they?

They're keys.

# 3A What's in your bag?

## 1 VOCABULARY small things

a Can you remember five things in the classroom? Write the words.

1 the b \_\_\_\_\_ 2 the d \_\_\_\_\_ 3 a c \_\_\_\_\_ 4 a l \_\_\_\_\_ 5 a w \_\_\_\_\_

b ► p.119 Vocabulary Bank *Small things*.

## 2 GRAMMAR a / an; singular and plural nouns

a Read the lists. Write *bus* or *plane*.

b 165))) Listen and check.

c Complete the chart.



### Where is it? Oh, no!

... It's on the bus!

... It's on the plane!



Singular	Plural
 a key	 keys
 _____ phone	 _____
 _____ umbrella	 _____
 _____ bag	 _____

**A** The **top five** things people leave on the \_\_\_\_\_ are:

1. bags 2. cell phones 3. cameras 4. laptops 5. coats

**B** The **top five** things people leave on the \_\_\_\_\_ are:

1. cell phones 2. keys 3. wallets 4. coats 5. bags

d ► p.96 Grammar Bank 3A.



Learn more about *a / an* and singular and plural nouns, and practice them.

e ► Communication Memory game p.77



### 3 PRONUNCIATION

/z/ and /s/; plural endings

- a 1 68))) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 zebra	Brazil zero is he's
 snake	six seven Spain house

- b 1 69))) Listen and repeat the plurals.

 zebra	chairs cameras keys bags
 snake	books wallets laptops coats
/Iz/	watches buses pieces classes



#### Saying plural nouns

For nouns ending in *ch*, *sh*, *s*, *ss*, and *x*, we say /Iz/ for the plural form. -es = /Iz/ for nouns ending in -ches e.g. watches, -ses, e.g. glasses -xes e.g. boxes, -ces e.g. pieces and -ges e.g. pages, -shes e.g. brushes

### 4 SPEAKING & WRITING

- c 1 70))) Listen. Say the plurals. ))) It's a photo. ( They're photos.



- a Look at the pictures. Ask and answer with a partner.

What is it? ( It's a / an...

What are they? ( They're...

- b What's in your bag / pocket? Check (✓) the things.

a cell phone ☐  
a book ☐  
a key ☐  
an ID card ☐  
a wallet ☐  
an umbrella ☐  
a credit card ☐  
a pen ☐

- c Write what you have in your bag / pocket, e.g., a book, keys.

- d Now tell a partner.

( In my bag, I have a book, keys, a pen, ...

### 5 LISTENING

- 1 71))) Listen to five conversations. Write the thing or things that they say.

1 Excuse me, miss!  
Is this your \_\_\_\_\_?  
2 Here are your \_\_\_\_\_.  
3 Sorry, it's my \_\_\_\_\_.  
4 Look in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
5 Is a \_\_\_\_\_ OK?

**G** this / that / these / those

**V** more small things

**P** /ð/ and /æ/

What are those?

They're toys.

# 3B Is that a hat?



## 1 VOCABULARY more small things

a Can you remember three small things?  
Look at the picture and write the words.

1 a **b** \_\_\_\_\_

2 an **u** \_\_\_\_\_

3 a **p** \_\_\_\_\_

b Look at items 4–10 in the picture. Write the number next to the correct word.

a hat ☐

a T-shirt ☐

a map ☐

a postcard ☐

a keychain ☐

a toy ☐

sunglasses ☐

## 2 LISTENING

a (2 2)) Listen and complete the dialogues.

- 1 Amy Excuse me. What are those?  
Joe They're <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.  
Amy Oh, they're cute!  
And is that a <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_?  
Joe Yes, it is.  
Amy Are these sunglasses?  
Joe Yes, they are. They're <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ dollars.  
Amy Oh! That's a lot. I'm sorry. Bye.

- 2 Joe Excuse me, miss!  
Is this your <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_?  
Amy Oh, yes, it is. Thanks!  
Joe You're welcome.  
So, how about <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ dollars  
for the sunglasses?  
Amy Really? OK!

b (2 3)) Listen and repeat.

c In pairs, practice the dialogues.

### 3 GRAMMAR *this / that / these / those*

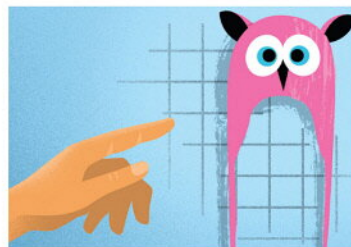
a Read the dialogues in 2 on page 18 again. Complete the questions.



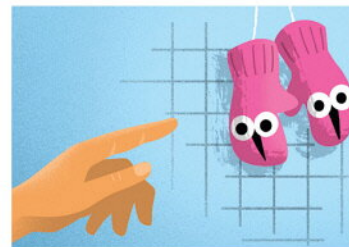
1 Is \_\_\_\_\_ your bag?



2 Are \_\_\_\_\_ sunglasses?



3 Is \_\_\_\_\_ a hat?



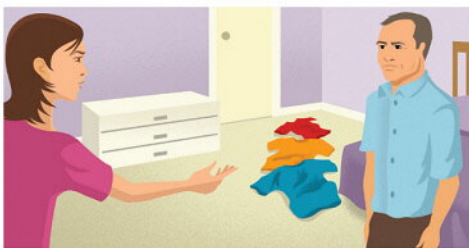
4 What are \_\_\_\_\_?

b ► p.96 Grammar Bank 3B. Learn more about *this / that / these / those*, and practice them.

c Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with *this, that, these, or those*.



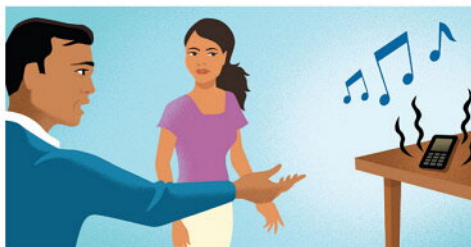
1 \_\_\_\_\_ isn't a good map.



2 Are \_\_\_\_\_ your T-shirts?



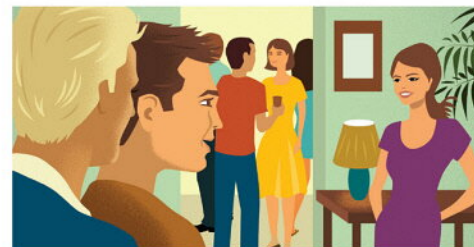
3 \_\_\_\_\_ are my baby photos.



4 Is \_\_\_\_\_ your cell phone?



5 Look at \_\_\_\_\_! They're great!





6 Who is \_\_\_\_\_?  
She's very good-looking!

d 25))) Listen and check.

### 4 PRONUNCIATION /ð/ and /æ/

a 26))) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 mother	this these that those they the
 cat	hat map bag sunglasses that

b 27))) Listen. Practice the sentences.

This toy, these pens, and those coats are from the US.  
That's my bag. Where are my hat, map, and sunglasses?

### 5 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 28))) Look at the picture on page 18. Listen to Amy and Joe. Circle the objects Amy asks about.

b Listen again. Complete the questions and answers.

- "What's \_\_\_\_\_?" "It's a \_\_\_\_\_."
- "Are \_\_\_\_\_?" "Yes, they are."
- "Is \_\_\_\_\_ a toy?" "No, it isn't. It's a \_\_\_\_\_."
- "What are \_\_\_\_\_?" "They're \_\_\_\_\_."

c Practice the questions and answers with a partner.

d In pairs, ask and answer questions about things in the classroom. Use *this / these* for things near you and *that / those* for things that aren't near.

Is that a dictionary? Yes, it is.

What's this? It's a keychain.

What are those? They're pens.

# Practical English How much is it?

## 1 UNDERSTANDING PRICES

a **2 9**) Listen and repeat.

twenty **euros**



fifty **cents**

twenty **dollars**



twenty-five **cents**

twenty **pounds**



fifty **pence** (fifty p)

b Match the prices and words.

- |                                    |                                          |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 1 £12.75 <input type="checkbox"/>  | A five dollars and thirty-five cents     |
| 2 \$1.59 <input type="checkbox"/>  | B eighty cents                           |
| 3 €50.99 <input type="checkbox"/>  | C a dollar fifty-nine                    |
| 4 \$5.35 <input type="checkbox"/>  | D fifty euros ninety-nine                |
| 5 \$13.25 <input type="checkbox"/> | E sixty p                                |
| 6 €3.20 <input type="checkbox"/>   | F thirteen dollars and twenty-five cents |
| 7 60p <input type="checkbox"/>     | G three euros twenty                     |
| 8 \$0.80 <input type="checkbox"/>  | H twelve pounds seventy-five             |

c **2 10**) Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

d Cover the words and look at the prices. Practice saying them.




e **2 11**) Listen to four conversations. How much is it?  
Circle the right price.



f ➤ p.87 Listen again with the audioscript.

## 2 PRONUNCIATION /ʊr/, /s/, and /k/

a **2 12**) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 tourist	euro Europe sure tour
 snake	cent pence city price
 keys	coffee Canada credit card

### Saying the letter c

The letter c usually = /s/ before the letters e, i, and y,  
and = /k/ before other letters.

b **2 13**) Listen. Practice the sentences.

Euros are money in Europe.

The price is six dollars and sixty cents.

How much is a cup of coffee in Canada?

### 3 BUYING A COFFEE

- a (2 14))) Read the menu and listen. Circle the items the woman asks for.

CITY COFFEE			
<b>Espresso</b>	Regular <b>\$1.80</b>	Large <b>\$2.35</b>	<b>Chocolate brownie</b> <b>\$2.95</b>
<b>Americano</b>	Regular <b>\$2.20</b>	Large <b>\$3.10</b>	<b>Muffin</b> <b>\$2.95</b>
<b>Cappuccino</b>	Regular <b>\$3.25</b>	Large <b>\$3.55</b>	<b>Cookies</b> <b>\$1.50</b>
<b>Latte</b>	Regular <b>\$3.50</b>	Large <b>\$4.00</b>	
<b>Tea</b>	Regular <b>\$1.50</b>	Large <b>\$2.15</b>	



- b Listen again and read the dialogue. Write the missing words.

<b>Waiter</b>	Welcome to City Coffee.
<b>Woman</b>	Hi, a <sup>1</sup> _____ and a chocolate brownie, please.
<b>Waiter</b>	What kind of coffee? Espresso, Americano, cappuccino, or latte?
<b>Woman</b>	A cappuccino, <sup>2</sup> _____.
<b>Waiter</b>	Regular or <sup>3</sup> _____?
<b>Woman</b>	Regular. <sup>4</sup> _____ much is it?
<b>Waiter</b>	Six dollars and twenty cents, please.
<b>Woman</b>	<sup>5</sup> _____ you are.
<b>Waiter</b>	Thanks. Here's your change.

- c (2 15))) Listen and repeat. Practice the dialogue with a partner.
- d Practice with a partner. Ask the prices on the menu.  
*How much is a regular latte?* ( \$3.50.
- e Role-play the conversation in b.  
**A** You are the waiter / waitress.  
**B** You are the customer. Ask for two things.
- f Change roles. Role-play the conversation again.

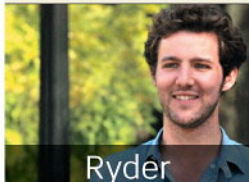


**A** Welcome to City Coffee. **B** A regular latte and a muffin, please.

### 4 VIDEO PEOPLE ON THE STREET

What kind of coffee is that?  
How much is it?

- a (2 16))) Watch or listen to James. Is his coffee a cappuccino? What kind of coffee is it?
- b (2 17))) Watch or listen. How much is it?
- c (2 18))) Watch or listen to three more people and complete the chart.



	Kind of coffee	Price
 Ryder		
 Cristina		
 Kurt		

- d In pairs, ask and answer the questions in the box.

# 4A Family and friends

Who's Matt?

He's my sister's husband.

## 1 GRAMMAR possessive adjectives; possessive s

a (2 19)) Listen and complete 1–4 with these names.

Nolan Princess Sara Tom



- 1 **Maria** Hi, Sara! Welcome to our house.  
**Sara** Thanks.  
**Maria** This is my husband, <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. And these are **our** children.  
**Sara** What are **their** names?  
**Maria** **Her** name's Emma, and **his** name's <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
**Emma** And this is our cat.  
**Sara** Oh, cute! What's **its** name?  
**Emma** **Her** name is <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. She's a girl.  
**Sara** Oh, sorry.



- 2 **Maria** The name of the restaurant is Marc's Cafe. The phone number is on the table.  
**Sara** Great, thanks.  
**Maria** My husband's cell phone number is on the table, too.  
**Sara** OK. And **your** number is in **my** phone.  
**Maria** Now, children. <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ is **your** babysitter. Be nice to her.  
**Children** OK, Mom.

b Listen again and read the dialogues. Then complete the chart with a **highlighted** word.

I	<u>my</u> (phone)
you	_____
he	_____
she	_____
it	_____
we	_____
you	_____
they	_____

c Read dialogue 2 again. Complete the sentences with words from the dialogue.

- 1 The name of the restaurant is \_\_\_\_\_ Cafe.  
 2 My \_\_\_\_\_ cell phone number is on the table, too.

d ► **p.98 Grammar Bank 4A.** Learn more about possessive adjectives and possessive s and practice them.

e Talk to a partner. Point to people in the classroom. What are their names?

What's her name? ( ) What are their names? ( )

## 2 VOCABULARY people and family

a Complete the sentences with one word.

- 1 Tom is Maria's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Emma and Nolan are Tom and Maria's \_\_\_\_\_.

b ➤ **p.120 Vocabulary Bank People and family.**

c Complete the sentences with a name from the dialogues in 1. Use some names more than once.

Emma Maria Nolan Tom

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ is Tom's wife.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ is Emma's brother.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ is Nolan's sister.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ is Nolan's father.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ is Maria's husband.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ are Maria's son and daughter.

d Cover c and practice with the people in the dialogues in 1.

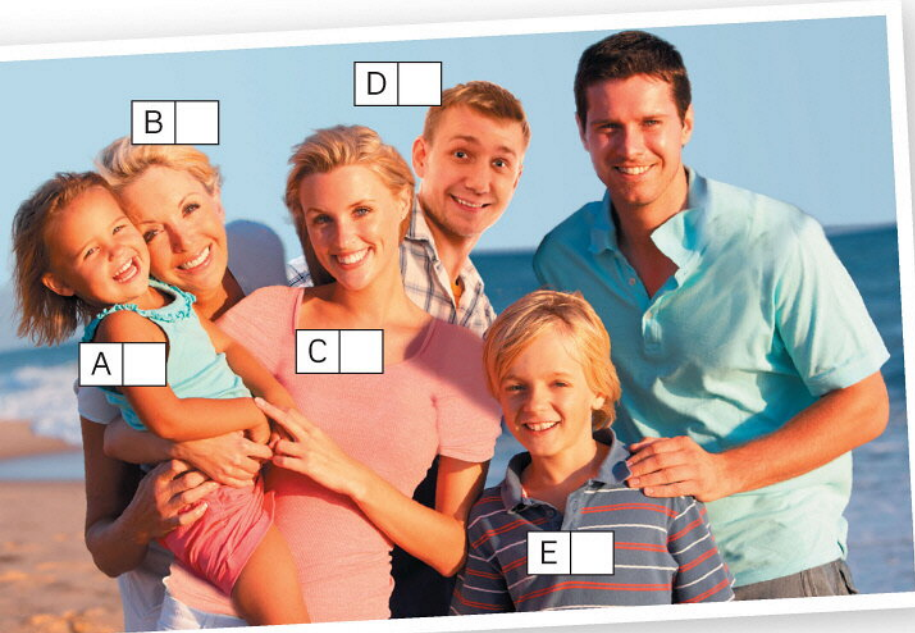
Who's Emma? ( ) She's Tom's...

## 3 LISTENING

a (2 25))) Listen to Eric. Number the people 1–5.

b Listen again. Write the things that they say.

- 1 Is this a picture of your \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 Is she your \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3 Her \_\_\_\_\_ is four and her \_\_\_\_\_ is seven.
- 4 Is he your sister's \_\_\_\_\_?



## 4 PRONUNCIATION /ə/, /ʌ/, and /ər/

a (2 26))) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.



computer

woman children welcome seven



up

brother husband son mother



bird

her mother number girl

b (2 27))) Listen. Practice the sentences.

The woman has seven children.

My mother's son is my brother.

Who are they? They're her mother and father.

## 5 SPEAKING & WRITING

a Work with a partner:

A and B write the names of six people (your family or friends) on a piece of paper.

A give your piece of paper to B. B give your piece of paper to A.

A ask B about his / her people. B ask A about his / her people.

Who's Marco? ( ) He's my sister's husband.

b Read the text and write the names on the photo.



My name is Emma. I'm from Vancouver, Canada. My father's name is Edward, and my mother's name is Marcy. I have two brothers. Their names are Mark and Paul. We have a cat. His name is Tiger.

c Now write about your family.

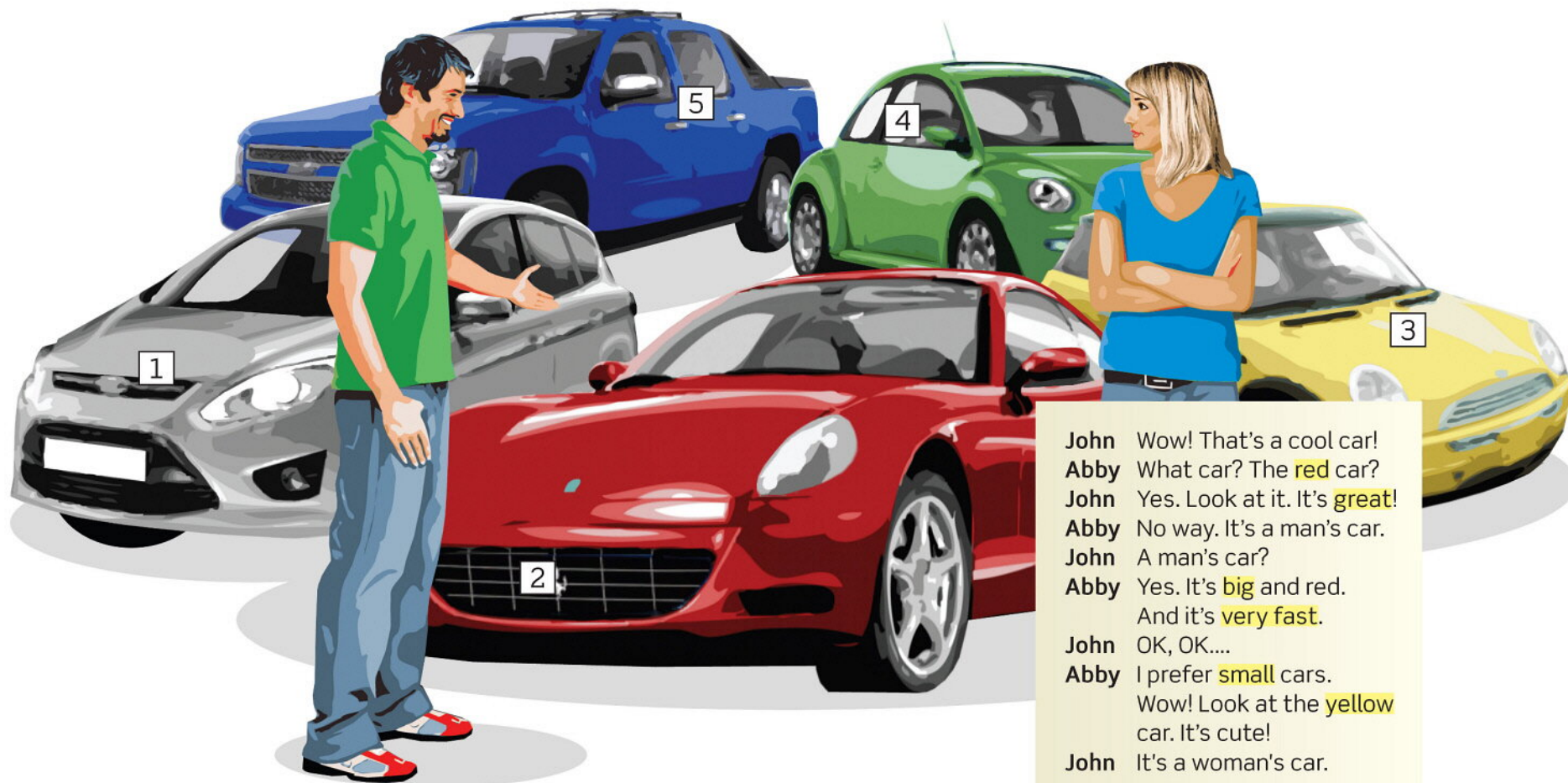
d Tell your partner about your family.

## 6 (2 28))) SONG You're the First, the Last, My Everything 🎵

What color  
is it?

It's red.

## 4B That's a cool car!



John Wow! That's a cool car!  
 Abby What car? The red car?  
 John Yes. Look at it. It's great!  
 Abby No way. It's a man's car.  
 John A man's car?  
 Abby Yes. It's big and red.  
 And it's very fast.  
 John OK, OK....  
 Abby I prefer small cars.  
 Wow! Look at the yellow  
 car. It's cute!  
 John It's a woman's car.

## 1 VOCABULARY &amp; SPEAKING

colors and common adjectives

- a (2 29))) Match the cars and nationalities.  
 Listen and check.

American ☐Italian ☐British ☐Japanese ☐German ☐

- b (2 30))) Listen and read the dialogue. What are the two cars?
- c Look at the highlighted words. Guess their meaning.
- d (2 31))) Listen again and repeat the dialogue.  
 Then practice it with a partner.
- e ► p.121 Vocabulary Bank Adjectives.
- f Look at the picture of the cars 1–5. Practice with a partner.

1 Ask and answer.

What color is it?  It's red.

2 Describe the cars. Use two adjectives.

Car 2 is fast and expensive. 

## 2 GRAMMAR adjectives

- a Circle the right sentence.

- 1 a The VW is a small car.  
 b The VW is a car small.
- 2 a Ferraris and BMWs are expensive.  
 b Ferraris and BMWs are expensive.

- b ► p.98 Grammar Bank 4B. Learn more about adjectives and practice them.

- c ► p.121 Vocabulary Bank Adjectives. In pairs, look at the pictures in 1 COLORS and make eight sentences.

It's a red phone.

- d Look at the cars in the picture. A think of a car.  
 B ask questions. Guess the car.

Is it a German car?  No, it isn't.Is it a blue car?  Yes, it is.

### 3 READING

- a In pairs, look at the questions. Which are important for men and which are important for women? Write 1–7 in the article.

- |                       |                |                       |               |
|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| 1 Is it a nice color? | 3 Is it big?   | 5 Is it easy to park? | 7 Is it safe? |
| 2 Is it fast?         | 4 Is it cheap? | 6 Is it luxurious?    |               |

- b Read the article and check.
- c Do you agree or disagree with the article?
- d Look at the **highlighted** words. Guess their meaning. Check with your teacher or a dictionary.

## What car? Men and women are different.

### Important questions for men:

\_\_\_\_\_ ? \_\_\_\_\_ ? \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Mercedes, BMW, and Audi are very **popular** with men. 90% of drivers of the **luxurious** Mercedes S65 AMG (top speed 186 mph / 300 kph) are men. Big SUVs are also very popular with men.



### Important questions for women:

1 \_\_\_\_\_ ? \_\_\_\_\_ ? \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Honda, Hyundai, and Volkswagen are popular with women. 65% of drivers of VW Beetle **convertibles** are women. Three of the top five women's cars are sports cars (but not very expensive sports cars). Women prefer **safe** cars and small cars. (Small cars are easy to **park**.) Color is also very **important** for women.



### 4 PRONUNCIATION /ɔ/, /ɑr/, and /ɔr/

- a (2 36))) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.



saw

talk small tall daughter



car

large park are tomorrow



horse

orange short board door

- b (2 37))) Listen. Practice the phrases.

a small ball

park the car

an orange door

### 5 SPEAKING & WRITING

- a Talk in small groups about your car or your family's car.

*My car is a Honda Civic. It isn't a very new car.  
It's small and it's green. It's a great car.*

- b Write about your "dream" car.

My dream car is a \_\_\_\_\_. (model) It's a / an \_\_\_\_\_ car. (nationality) It's \_\_\_\_\_. (color) It's \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ . (adjectives)

- c Now tell a partner.

# 3&4 Review and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a or b.

- 1 **A** What is it?  
**B** It's \_\_\_\_\_ email from my friend.  
a an b a
- 2 It's \_\_\_\_\_.  
a a umbrella b an umbrella
- 3 **A** Where are your sunglasses?  
**B** \_\_\_\_\_ in my bag.  
a It's b They're
- 4 **A** What are they?  
**B** \_\_\_\_\_.  
a They're gloves b It's gloves
- 5 She has two \_\_\_\_\_.  
a cell phone b cell phones
- 6 I have two \_\_\_\_\_.  
a dictionary b dictionaries
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ are my credit cards.  
a That b These
- 8 **A** \_\_\_\_\_ those hats?  
**B** Yes, they are.  
a Is b Are
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ my friend, Tom.  
a This he is b This is
- 10 **A** \_\_\_\_\_ much is it?  
**B** Twenty euros.  
a What b How
- 11 He's Japanese. \_\_\_\_\_ name is Ken.  
a His b Her
- 12 We're Mr. and Mrs. Brown.  
\_\_\_\_\_ son is in room 4.  
a Our b Their
- 13 My \_\_\_\_\_ is Amanda.  
a name's wife b wife's name
- 14 These chairs are \_\_\_\_\_.  
a very expensive b very expensive
- 15 A Ferrari is a \_\_\_\_\_.  
a car fast b fast car

## VOCABULARY

a Write the things.



1 a wallet



2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_



6 \_\_\_\_\_

b Complete the chart.

	
man	woman
1 _____	girl
father	2 _____
3 _____	wife
son	4 _____
5 _____	sister
boyfriend	6 _____

c Write the irregular plural.

man men

1 woman \_\_\_\_\_ 2 child \_\_\_\_\_ 3 person \_\_\_\_\_

d Write the opposite adjective.

good bad

1 slow \_\_\_\_\_ 3 expensive \_\_\_\_\_ 5 tall \_\_\_\_\_  
2 small \_\_\_\_\_ 4 long \_\_\_\_\_

## PRONUNCIATION

a Can you remember these words and sounds?

vowels



consonants



b ► p.132-134 Sound Bank. Check the words and sounds, and practice saying the example words.

c Underline the stressed syllable.

1 ex|pen|sive 2 daugh|ter 3 fam|ily 4 glass|es 5 um|bre|lla

## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

**My name's Jerry Lee**, and I'm from Vancouver, Canada. I'm married, and I have two children, a son and a daughter. My son's name is Steven. He's 17. He's tall with **dark hair**. My daughter's name is Tracey. She's 19. My children are very good-looking. Why? Their mother is beautiful!



1 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_

**My name's Gustavo**, and I'm from São Paulo in Brazil. I'm 22. I have two sisters. Their names are Ana and Luisa. Ana is 24. She's tall, with long **blond hair**. She isn't married. Luisa is 21 and very different from Ana. She isn't tall and blond. She's short with dark hair. She's married. Her husband's name is Mario.



1 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_

a Read the two texts. Write the people's names in the pictures.

b Answer the questions with a sentence.

- 1 What Jerry's last name? His last name is Lee.
- 2 Where is Jerry from? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Is his son tall or short? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 How old is Tracey? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 What nationality is Gustavo? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Who is Ana? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Is Ana married? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 How old is Luisa? \_\_\_\_\_

c Look at the **highlighted** words. Use the photos to guess their meaning.

## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

2 38))) Listen and choose the right answer.

- 1 a Her name's Pat.  
b His name's Pat.
- 2 a The man's glasses are blue.  
b The man's glasses are red.
- 3 a The pen is \$2.06.  
b The pen is \$2.60.
- 4 a The hotel's nice.  
b The hotel's very small.
- 5 a The man buys two lattes.  
b The man buys two lattes and a brownie.
- 6 a They're keychains.  
b They're toys.
- 7 a The man's sister is tall.  
b The man's sister is short.
- 8 a The woman's car is black.  
b The woman's car is red.

## CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Check (✓) the boxes.

Can you...?

- |                                           |                                      |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 say what's in your bag                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 2 talk about things near and far from you | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 3 say who is in your family               | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 4 introduce somebody                      | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 5 describe cars                           | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 6 ask for things in a cafe or store       | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 7 ask about prices                        | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |



**Short movies** A souvenir shop

Watch and enjoy the movie.

# 5A A bad hair day

Do you want a coffee?

No, thanks. I don't drink coffee.

## 1 LISTENING & READING

a (2 39))) Listen to the dialogue. Number the pictures 1–5.



**Hair stylist** Hello. Is this your first time here?

**Customer** Yes, it is.

**Hair stylist** Do you live <sup>1</sup> near here ?

**Customer** No, I don't. I live <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

**Hair stylist** Oh, nice. So, do you want long hair?  
Short hair?

**Customer** I don't know. Something different.

**Hair stylist** Do you want a <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?

**Customer** No, thanks. I don't drink <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

**Hair stylist** Do you want a <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?

**Customer** Yes, please. Oh, look.  
Angelina Jolie's children.

**Hair stylist** Do you have <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?

**Customer** Yes, I do. I have two <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

**Hair stylist** How old are they?

**Customer** Eight and ten.

**Customer** It's very short.

**Hair stylist** Don't worry. Wait.

**Hair stylist** OK. Do you like it?



b Read the dialogue and complete 2–7 with a word(s) from the list.

boys children coffee (x2) downtown magazine near here

c Listen and check.

d ► **Communication** A new haircut p.79 Do you like her haircut?

e (2 40))) Listen and complete the last line of the dialogue.

**Hair stylist** OK. Do you like it?

**Customer** \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 GRAMMAR

simple present: I and you

a Read the dialogue again. Complete the chart with *do* or *don't*.

	Simple present
+	I live near here.
-	I _____ live near here.
?	_____ you live near here?
✓	Yes, I _____.
✗	No, I _____.

b ► p.100 Grammar Bank 5A. Learn more about simple present: *I and you* and practice it.

## 3 VOCABULARY common verbs 1

a Match the phrases.

- |                                    |                   |
|------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> I have  | a downtown.       |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> I drink | b two children.   |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> I live  | c coffee.         |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> I want  | d my new haircut. |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> I like  | e a magazine.     |

b ► p.122 Vocabulary Bank Common verbs 1.

## 4 LISTENING

- a (2 44) Listen to the dialogue. Is the woman happy 😊 or sad ☹ at the end of the dialogue?
- b Listen again. Circle a or b.

- 1 a Geary Street, please.  
b Kearny Street, please.
- 2 a The traffic is bad.  
b The traffic is good.
- 3 a Do you live in San Francisco?  
b Do you like San Francisco?
- 4 a I like my new haircut.  
b I don't like my new haircut.
- 5 a Really? Do you like it?  
b Really? You like it!
- 6 a I want a new coat.  
b I want a new bag.
- 7 a That's \$14.50.  
b That's \$17.00.
- 8 a Have a good day.  
b Have a nice day.



## 6 SPEAKING

- a Complete 2–10 with a verb from the list

drink eat have like listen live read speak want watch

- |                              |                    |
|------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 <u>live</u> near here      | in a house         |
| 2 _____ brothers and sisters | a cat or a dog     |
| 3 _____ CNN                  | MTV                |
| 4 _____ to pop music         | to classical music |
| 5 _____ newspapers           | magazines          |
| 6 _____ Italian food         | Thai food          |
| 7 _____ soda                 | coffee             |
| 8 _____ Spanish              | Arabic             |
| 9 _____ a new cell phone     | a new bag          |
| 10 _____ Mondays             | your English class |



- b Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions with the phrases in a.

Do you live in a house? ( ) No, I don't. I live in an apartment.



Do you have brothers and sisters? ( ) Yes, I do. I have two sisters.

## 7 (2 47) SONG I Want to Break Free 🎵

## 5 PRONUNCIATION

/h/, /w/, and /v/; linking

- a (2 45) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 house	how who hair here
 witch	where what want work
 vase	have live very TV

- b (2 46) Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

### 🔍 Linking

When people speak quickly, they link words together.

- 1 A Do you want a coffee?  
B Yes, an espresso please.
- 2 A Do you live in an apartment?  
B No, I don't. I live in a house.
- 3 A Do you have a big family?  
B Yes, I do. I have a sister, and I have three brothers.

# 5B What do you have for breakfast?

## 1 VOCABULARY food and drink

a Read about Marco's breakfast. Match the words in bold with the pictures.

1 fruit

2 \_\_\_\_\_

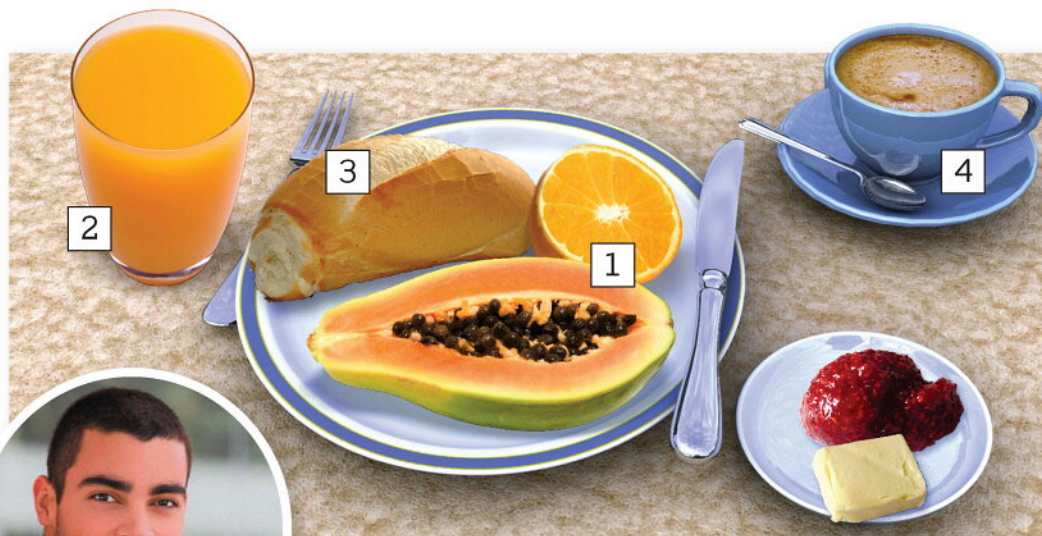
3 \_\_\_\_\_

4 \_\_\_\_\_

b ➤ p.123 Vocabulary Bank Food and drink.

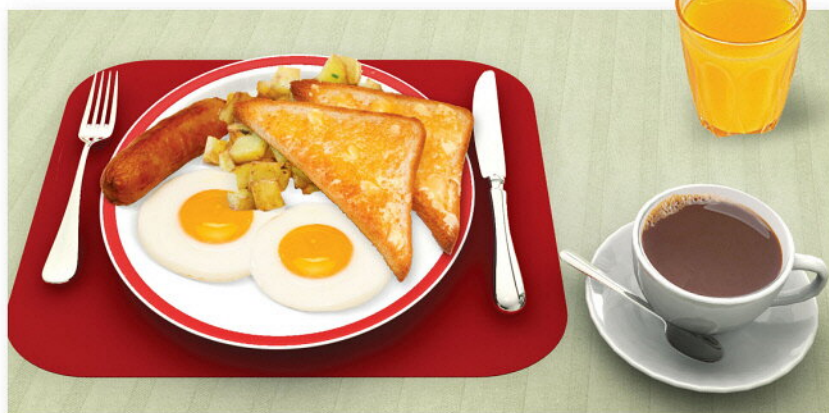
## 2 READING

a Look at the photos. What food can you name?



### Marco from Rio in Brazil

I have a simple breakfast at home. I have **bread**, **fruit**, and **coffee with milk**. I usually have **orange juice**, too. That's a very typical Brazilian breakfast. I love it!



### Kristin from Seattle in the US

On the weekend, my friends and I have a big breakfast at a restaurant. What do we eat? Everything! We have eggs, potatoes, and **sausage**. We also have bread—usually **toast**—and coffee and juice. That's a typical American breakfast. It's delicious and fun. Americans really love breakfast.



### Minjun from Seoul in Korea

My parents have a traditional Korean breakfast at home. It isn't very different from lunch and dinner. They have fish, rice, and **soup**. They also have **kimchi**—it's a kind of spicy vegetable. They also drink Korean **tea**. What do I have for breakfast? I'm very busy. I eat in a cafe. I have coffee and a **croissant**, then I run to the bus!

b Look at the **highlighted** words. Guess their meaning. Check with your teacher or a dictionary.

c Read the texts in 1 and 2. Put the words and phrases under the correct people.

coffee fish fruit meat vegetables breakfast at home typical / traditional breakfast

Marco	Kristin	Minjun	Minjun's parents
coffee	coffee	coffee	

d What do you have for breakfast? Do you have a special breakfast food in your country?

### 3 GRAMMAR

simple present: *we, you, they*; *Wh-* questions

- a Look at the sentences. Are the verbs the same or different for *I, we*, and *they*?

I **have** strong coffee with milk and sugar.

We **have** eggs, potatoes, and sausage.

They **have** fish, rice, and soup.

- b Look at the texts in 2. Complete the questions.

Kristin: \_\_\_\_\_ we eat? Everything!

Minjun: \_\_\_\_\_ I have for breakfast?

- c ➤ **p.100 Grammar Bank 5B.** Learn more about simple present: *we, you, they* and *Wh-* questions, and practice them.

### 4 LISTENING

- a (2 51))) Jessie is an American teenager, but her parents are from China. Listen to her talk about food in her family. What's her favorite meal?

- b Listen again. Circle the things she has.

#### Breakfast:

cereal fish rice tea toast coffee

#### Lunch:

fruit a hamburger salad pasta pizza water soda juice

#### Dinner:

vegetables meat rice pasta fish potatoes

- c ➤ **p.88** Listen again with the audioscript. Check your answers to b.

- d What's your favorite meal of the day?

### 5 PRONUNCIATION word stress; /tj/, /dʒ/, and /g/

- a (2 52))) Underline the stressed syllable. Listen and check.

vege|ta|bles po|ta|toes bu|tter su|gar sa|lad cer|e|al cho|colate

- b (2 53))) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.



chess cheese lunch chocolate sandwich



jazz juice Japan orange vegetables



girl sugar eggs good bag

- c (2 54))) Listen. Practice the sentences.

I'm Charlie. I have a cheese sandwich for lunch.

I'm Jane. I like orange juice and vegetables.

I'm Grace. I have eggs and coffee with sugar. It's good!

### 6 SPEAKING

- a Read the questionnaire and think about your answers.

## FOOD QUESTIONNAIRE

### In your country...

- What do people have for breakfast?
- Do people usually eat a traditional breakfast?
- Do people prefer tea or coffee?
- Do they eat a lot of fast food?
- Do they eat a lot of food from other countries?
- What do they eat on holidays or special days?

### In your family...

- Where do you eat breakfast during the week?
- What do you have for breakfast on the weekend?
- Do parents and children eat the same food for breakfast?
- What do you eat a lot of? (meat, vegetables, pasta, rice...)
- Where do you have lunch?
  - a) at home
  - b) at work / school
  - c) in a restaurant
- Do you eat in restaurants? Where do you go?
- Do you have dinner together?
- Do you watch TV or talk at dinner?
- What is your family's favorite food?

- b Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

### 7 WRITING

- **p.84 Writing** Posting a comment. Write about your typical breakfast.

# Practical English What time is it?

## 1 TELLING TIME

a (2 55) Listen and match the dialogues and pictures.

- 1 Lisa It's late.  
Josh Really? What time is it?  
Lisa It's eleven thirty. Time to go to bed.  
Josh Why? I'm not tired.
- 2 Josh What time is it?  
Lisa It's quarter to seven. Time to get up!  
Josh But I'm tired!  
Lisa Have some coffee.
- 3 Josh Excuse me. What time is it?  
Man Sorry, I don't know. I don't have a watch.  
.....  
Josh Excuse me. What time is it?  
Woman Let me see. It's quarter after seven.  
Josh Oh, no. I'm late!



b (2 56) Listen and repeat the dialogues in a. Practice with a partner.

## 2 VOCABULARY the time

a (2 57) Listen and repeat the times.



It's three (o'clock).



It's five after three.



It's ten after three.



It's quarter after three. /'kwɔrtər/



It's twenty after three.



It's twenty-five after three.



It's three thirty.



It's twenty-five to four.



It's twenty to four.



It's quarter to four.



It's ten to four.



It's five to four.


### o'clock

It's three. It's three o'clock.  
It's five after three. NOT *It's five after three o'clock.*  
It's three thirty. NOT *It's three o'clock thirty.*

b Cover the times. Look at the clocks and say the times.

c What time is it now? What time does this class start?

### 3 PRONUNCIATION question intonation

 In *yes / no* questions, your voice goes up at the end. In *Wh-* and *How* questions, your voice usually goes down at the end.

- a **2 58**))) Listen and repeat the questions. Make your voice go up or down with the arrows.

Is it two thirty?      What time is it?

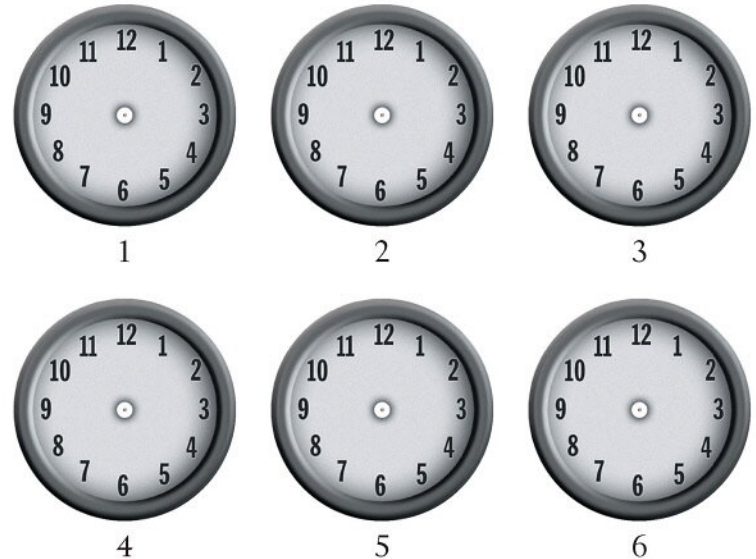
- b **2 59**))) Listen and repeat the dialogue. Make your voice go up or down with the arrows.

A Excuse me.  
B Yes?  
A What time is it?  
B It's quarter to two.  
A Excuse me?  
B It's quarter to two. Are you late?  
A Yes, I am!

- c Practice the dialogue with a partner.

### 4 LISTENING

- a **2 60**))) Listen and draw the time on the clocks.



- b Practice with a partner.

Number 1. What time is it?      It's nine o'clock.

- c **► Communication** What time is it? A p.77 B p.79.

### 5 VIDEO PEOPLE ON THE STREET

What time do you get up during the week?  
What time do you go to bed during the week?  
What time do you get up on the weekend?  
What time do you go to bed on the weekend?

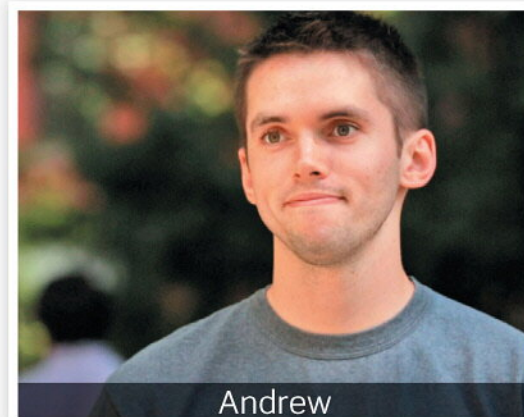
- a **2 61**))) Watch or listen to Andrew. Write the times.

What time does he get up during the week? \_\_\_\_\_  
What time does he go to bed during the week? \_\_\_\_\_

- b **2 62**))) Watch or listen. Write the times.

What time does he get up on the weekend? \_\_\_\_\_  
What time does he go to bed on the weekend? \_\_\_\_\_

- c **2 63**))) Watch or listen to four more people and complete the chart.



Andrew

	Joe	Samantha	Ryder	Amber
gets up during the week				
goes to bed during the week				
gets up on the weekend				
goes to bed on the weekend				

- d In pairs, ask and answer the questions in the box.

# 6A He speaks English at work

## 1 GRAMMAR simple present: *he, she, it*

a **2 64**) Listen to the dialogue. Circle a or b.

- 1 a Shelly and her husband live in Japan.  
b Shelly and her husband live in the US.
- 2 a Shelly's husband is a salesperson.  
b Shelly's husband is a tour guide.
- 3 a They like their jobs.  
b They don't like their jobs.

b Listen again and read the dialogue. Check your answers.

**Maria** Wow! Your Japanese is fantastic.  
**Shelly** Thanks. I get a lot of practice. My husband's Japanese and I work for a Japanese company here in New York.  
**Maria** Oh, cool. What do you do?  
**Shelly** I'm a salesperson.  
**Maria** Do you like your job?  
**Shelly** Yes, I like it very much.  
**Maria** What does your husband do?  
**Shelly** He's a tour guide. He takes Japanese tourists to museums.  
**Maria** Does he like his job?  
**Shelly** Yes, very much. He likes art. And he doesn't work in the mornings, only in the afternoons.  
**Maria** Do your children speak Japanese?  
**Shelly** A little, but they prefer English.



c **2 65**) Listen and repeat the highlighted phrases. How do the verbs change when they are about Shelly's husband? Complete the chart.

I / you	he / she
What <b>do you</b> do?	What _____ <b>your husband</b> do?
<b>Do you</b> like your job?	_____ <b>he</b> like his job?
Yes, I <b>like</b> it very much.	Yes, <b>he</b> _____ art.

d **p.102 Grammar Bank 6A.** Learn more about simple present: *he, she, it* and practice it.

## 2 PRONUNCIATION third person -s

a **2 67**) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 zebra	does has lives listens reads
 snake	likes speaks works eats drinks
/IZ/	finishes watches teaches

### Saying third person -s

The endings of simple present verbs with *he, she, it* follow the same pronunciation rules as plural nouns.

b **2 68**) Listen. Say the sentences in the third person singular.

) I like art. He... ( He likes art.

## 3 VOCABULARY

jobs and places of work

a Can you remember? What does Shelly do? What does her husband do?

b **p.124 Vocabulary Bank Jobs and places of work.**

c Ask five other students the question below. What do you do?

## 4 PRONUNCIATION

word and sentence stress

a Underline the stressed syllable(s).

- 1 a tea|cher
- 2 a doc|tor
- 3 a wai|ter
- 4 a fac|to|ry wor|ker
- 5 a law|yer
- 6 an a|ssis|tant
- 7 a po|lice|man
- 8 a sales|per|son

b (272)) Listen and check. How is the final -er / -or pronounced?

c (273)) Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

She's a **nurse**. She **works** in a **hospital**.

Does he **work** in a **store**? **Yes**, he **does**.

Is he a **salesperson**? **Yes**, he **is**.

## 5 SPEAKING & WRITING

a Think of two people you know who have jobs. Ask and answer with a partner.

What / do?  
Where / work?  
/ speak English at work?  
/ like his or her job?

Person number one  
is my mother. (What does she do?)

b Write about the two people.

*My mother is a nurse. She works in the Hospital Santa Cruz in Curitiba. She doesn't speak English at work. She likes her job.*

## 6 READING

a Work in pairs. Where are these companies from? What languages do you think they use?

Uniqlo LG Nissan Nokia

b Read the article and check your guesses in a.

### English: The Language of Business

We all know Nissan is a Japanese company. It has factories, offices, and salespeople **all over the world**. It is partners with a French company, Renault /re'nou/, and its **CEO**, Carlos Ghosn /goun/, is Brazilian. But what is the official language of Nissan? English!

At Nissan's **headquarters** in Tokyo, the **managers** are from Japan, North America, and Europe. They have **meetings** in English. They also read **documents**, make phone calls, and write emails in English.

"Sometimes everyone in a meeting is Japanese. Then we speak Japanese," one Nissan manager says. "But we are a **multinational** company and English is the only language we all know."

More and more big companies only use English. English is the official language of Uniqlo and Rakuten, two other big Japanese companies. It is also the official language of Nokia in Finland, LG in Korea, and more.



c Read the article again. Then mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

- 1 Nissan and Renault are partners. \_\_\_\_
- 2 Carlos Ghosn is from the US. \_\_\_\_
- 3 The official language of Nissan is English. \_\_\_\_
- 4 Nissan's managers send emails in English. \_\_\_\_
- 5 Sometimes everyone in a meeting is Japanese, but they all speak English. \_\_\_\_
- 6 English is the official language of other Japanese companies. \_\_\_\_

d Look at the **highlighted** words and phrases. Guess their meaning. Check with your teacher or a dictionary.

e Is English important for your job? Why (not)?

f Look at the list of jobs. Add two jobs to the list. Do you think English is important in these jobs? Write **I** (important), **V** (very important), or **N** (not important).

- |                           |                          |                  |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|------------------|
| ____ a) a doctor          | ____ b) a factory worker | ____ c) a lawyer |
| ____ d) a waitress        | ____ e) an assistant     | ____ f) an actor |
| ____ g) _____ (your idea) |                          |                  |
| ____ h) _____ (your idea) |                          |                  |

g Compare your answers in f with a partner.

For a doctor, English is very important. (For a ... English isn't important.)

What time  
do you get up?

I always  
get up at 6:00.

# 6B Do you like mornings?



- 1 What time do you get up?
- 2 What do you do next?
- 3 Do you take a shower?
- 4 What do you have for breakfast?
- 5 Do you have breakfast sitting down or standing up?
- 6 What time do you go to school / work?
- 7 Are you in a hurry in the morning?
- 8 Do you like mornings?



## 1 LISTENING & SPEAKING

- a Read the questionnaire and write your answers.
- b (3 2))) Andrew Collins is 21. He is a college student in California. Listen and write his answers.
- c (3 3))) Listen and repeat questions 1–8.
- d Ask your partner the questions.

## 2 VOCABULARY a typical day

- a ➤ p.125 Vocabulary Bank A typical day.
- b Can you remember? Mime or draw five verb phrases for your partner to guess.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

- a (3 6))) Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

What **time** do you have **lunch**?

At **one thirty**.

What **time** do you **finish work**?

At **six o'clock**.

What do you **do** in the **evening**?

I **read** or **watch TV**.

- b Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

What time do you...

• have lunch?

• finish work?

• have dinner?

What do you...

• do in the evening?

• do on the weekend?

## 4 GRAMMAR adverbs of frequency

- a Match sentences 1–4 with a–d.

	M	T	W	Th	F
1 <input type="checkbox"/> I always get up at 8:00 ...	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2 <input type="checkbox"/> I never drink coffee ...	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗
3 <input type="checkbox"/> I usually finish work at 6:00 ...	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓
4 <input type="checkbox"/> I sometimes watch a DVD ...	✗	✓	✗	✗	✓

a but on Wednesdays I finish at 7:00.

b or I read and listen to music.

c because I start work at 9:00.

d because I don't like it.

- b ➤ p.102 Grammar Bank 6B. Learn more about adverbs of frequency and practice them.

- c Write three sentences about you. Two sentences are true and one is false. Use *always*, *usually*, *sometimes*, or *never*.

*I always get up at 7:00.*

*I usually go to the gym at 7:30.*

*I never have meat for lunch.*

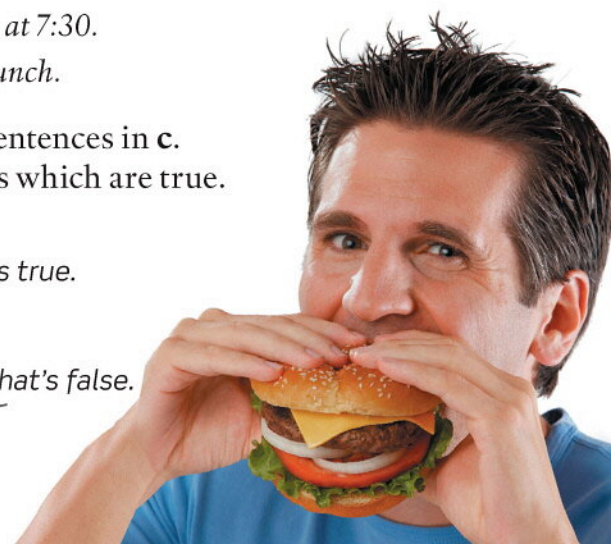
- d Tell a partner your sentences in c. Your partner guesses which are true.

*I always get up at 7:00*

*That's true.*

*I never have meat for lunch.*

*That's false.*



## 5 READING

- a Look at the photo of Simon Cowell. What do you know about him?
- b Read the article. Use the glossary to help you. Do you think Simon's day is typical for a TV star?
- c Read the article again. Answer the questions in pairs.
  - 1 Where does Simon Cowell live?
  - 2 Where does he have breakfast?
  - 3 What does he eat for breakfast?
  - 4 What does he do after breakfast?
  - 5 Does he exercise in the morning?
  - 6 What time does he start work?
  - 7 What time does he go to bed?
  - 8 Who does he send text messages to?
- d Look at the **highlighted** words and guess their meaning. Check with your teacher or a dictionary.
- e Complete the sentences with a **highlighted** word from the article.
  - 1 I get up at 7:00. \_\_\_\_\_ I take a shower.
  - 2 I read the newspaper \_\_\_\_\_ I have time.
  - 3 I have lunch at \_\_\_\_\_ 12:30.
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_ work, I go home and have dinner.
  - 5 I watch TV or read \_\_\_\_\_ I go to bed.

## 6 SPEAKING & WRITING

- a ➤ **p.125 Vocabulary Bank** *A typical day.*
- b Write about your typical morning. Use verbs from the Vocabulary Bank (*get up, have breakfast, etc.*). Use adverbs of frequency (*always, usually, etc.*) and time words (*then, after breakfast, etc.*).
- c Tell a partner about your typical afternoon and evening.

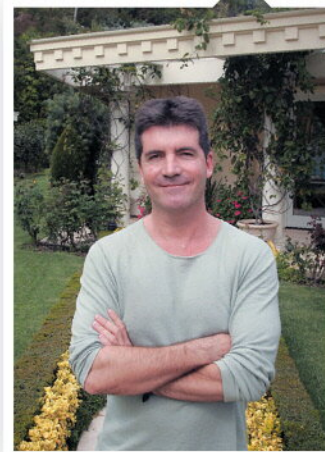
*I usually have lunch at twelve thirty.  
I have pizza or a sandwich and soda.*

## 7 38))) SONG Wonderful Tonight 🎵

# A Day in the Life of Simon Cowell



**Simon Cowell** is a judge on TV shows like *The X Factor*. He lives in his houses in London and Los Angeles.



**When** Cowell's alarm clock goes off in the morning, he always hits the snooze button two times. He has breakfast in bed and reads the newspaper. He always has the same breakfast: hot water, juice, and oatmeal. **Then** he has tea.

**After** breakfast, he takes a bath. His bathroom has a TV and he watches cartoons for an hour. He likes *The Flintstones*. Cowell loves baths. He takes a bath three times a day. He also exercises in the morning. He always does 500 push ups.

Cowell usually starts work at 1:00 in the afternoon and finishes at 9:00 p.m. He usually goes to bed at **about** 4:00 in the morning. **Before** that, he sends text messages to his assistants.

"I have a weird routine," he says.

### GLOSSARY



alarm clock goes off



hit the snooze button



oatmeal



cartoon



do push ups



send text messages

# 5&6 Review and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a or b.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ you want a soda?  
a Are b Do
- 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ meat.  
a don't eat b not eat
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ Korean food?  
a Like you b Do you like
- 4 In Japan, we \_\_\_\_\_ rice for breakfast.  
a have b has
- 5 A Do you live downtown?  
B Yes I \_\_\_\_\_.  
a do b live
- 6 A \_\_\_\_\_ for dinner?  
B I usually have salad and meat or fish.  
a You have what b What do you have
- 7 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you have lunch?  
B In a restaurant.  
a Where b What
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ she speak Spanish?  
a Do b Does
- 9 He \_\_\_\_\_ French at a university.  
a teaches b teaches
- 10 I \_\_\_\_\_ to bed before 12:00.  
a don't never go b never go
- 11 He \_\_\_\_\_ a sandwich for lunch.  
a usually has b has usually
- 12 My brother \_\_\_\_\_ children.  
a doesn't have b don't have
- 13 He usually gets up at 8:00.  
\_\_\_\_\_ he takes a shower.  
a After b Then
- 14 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you listen to music?  
B In the morning.  
a When b Where
- 15 A What does Molly \_\_\_\_\_?  
B She's a teacher.  
a work b do

## VOCABULARY

a Write the verb.

- watch TV
- 1 **t** \_\_\_\_\_ a shower
  - 2 **r** \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper
  - 3 **l** \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio
  - 4 **g** \_\_\_\_\_ shopping
  - 5 **l** \_\_\_\_\_ in an apartment
  - 6 **g** \_\_\_\_\_ up in the morning.

b Circle the different word.

- |             |         |            |
|-------------|---------|------------|
| soda        | meat    | fish       |
| 1 breakfast | lunch   | bread      |
| 2 office    | waiter  | hospital   |
| 3 cheese    | juice   | tea        |
| 4 teacher   | factory | assistant  |
| 5 fish      | sugar   | chocolate  |
| 6 fruit     | coffee  | vegetables |

c Write the times.

- |                                                                                      |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  |  |  |
| <u>quarter after ten</u>                                                             | 1 _____                                                                               | 2 _____                                                                               |
|  |  |  |
| 3 _____                                                                              | 4 _____                                                                               | 5 _____                                                                               |

## PRONUNCIATION

a Can you remember these words and sounds?



b ► p.132-134 Sound Bank. Check the words and sounds, and practice saying the example words.

c Underline the stressed syllable.

- 1 break|fast 2 po|ta|toes 3 a|ssis|tant 4 po|lice|man 5 u|su|al|ly

## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

- a Read the text and complete it with food words from the list.

butter fish fruit hamburgers meat tea

### Eat the Japanese way

Doctors say that the traditional diet in Japan and other Asian countries is very healthy.

#### Why is it good for you?

In Japan, people eat a lot of <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

and vegetables, rice, and fish.

They don't eat a lot of red

<sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, butter, or cheese.

This diet is very good for your heart, and people in Japan live longer than in other countries.

#### How to eat like the Japanese people and live a long life:

- Eat rice with every meal. People in Japan eat rice plain, with no <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ or oil.
- Eat a lot of vegetables every day.
- Drink green <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Don't drink soda.
- Eat a lot of <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Don't eat a lot of red meat, for example, <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.
- Eat on small plates. Make your meal look beautiful. Don't hurry your meals!



## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

- 3 9))) Listen and choose the right answer.

- 1 Where does the man live?
  - a Downtown.
  - b In a small town.
- 2 How many children does the woman have?
  - a Three.
  - b Four.
- 3 What does the woman drink?
  - a Soda.
  - b Orange juice.
- 4 What does the man usually have for breakfast?
  - a Sausage and eggs.
  - b Coffee and toast.
- 5 What does the man's wife do?
  - a She's a teacher.
  - b She's an assistant.
- 6 What time does the woman get up?
  - a 6:45.
  - b 7:15.
- 7 What time does the man finish work on Friday?
  - a 5:00.
  - b 6:00.
- 8 When does the woman usually go shopping?
  - a On Saturday.
  - b On Sunday.

## CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Check (✓) the boxes.

#### Can you...?

- 1 say what you do
- 2 ask what other people do
- 3 say what you have for breakfast
- 4 say what people eat in your country
- 5 ask and say what time it is
- 6 say what you do on a typical day
- 7 ask about other people's days

- |                          |             |
|--------------------------|-------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Yes, I can. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Yes, I can. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Yes, I can. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Yes, I can. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Yes, I can. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Yes, I can. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Yes, I can. |



Short movies **The life of a chef**  
Watch and enjoy the movie.

- b Do you eat "the Japanese way"?

# 7A Life at the end of the world

## 1 READING

- a** Look at the photos. Do you prefer Ushuaia /uˈʃwaɪə/ in the winter or in the summer?
- b** Read the introduction about Ushuaia and answer the questions.
- Where is Ushuaia?
  - How is life different in the winter and the summer?
- c** Now read the interview with Griselda Rodriguez. Match the questions with her answers.

- ☐ Do you like life in Ushuaia?
- ☐ Do you prefer the summer or the winter?
- ☐ Is the winter very cold?
- ☒ Do a lot of tourists come to Ushuaia?
- ☐ What do people do in the summer?
- ☐ What do people do in the winter?
- ☐ When do they usually come?

- d** **3 10** Listen and check.

- e** Look at the interview again. Match the **highlighted** words with their opposites.

- dark \_\_\_\_\_
- far from \_\_\_\_\_
- hot \_\_\_\_\_
- low \_\_\_\_\_
- outside \_\_\_\_\_
- short \_\_\_\_\_
- summer \_\_\_\_\_
- the same \_\_\_\_\_

- f** Ask and answer the questions in **c** about your town / city.



## Ushuaia

is a city of 65,000 people in the south of Argentina. It is very close to Antarctica, and a lot of tourists go there from Ushuaia by boat. In the winter, it is light for only six hours. In the summer, it is light for 19 hours, and people go to bed very late.



## INTERVIEW

# Griselda Rodriguez



is from Ushuaia. She works for the Department of Tourist Information.

### 1 Do a lot of tourists come to Ushuaia?

Yes, they do. About 200,000 tourists a year visit our city.

### 2

We have tourists all year, but our **high** season is in the summer, from October to March. People also come in the **winter**, in July and August.

### 3

Yes, it's **cold**. The temperature is usually about 1°C.

### 4

People do **different** activities. They ski and snowboard in the mountains, and they go ice skating. They take boat trips and see birds, sea lions, and other animals. But some people just stay **inside** and watch TV or play computer games.

### 5

We often go to some beautiful lakes **close to** town. Some people play golf, go to museums, or walk in Tierra del Fuego National Park. Tourists go to Antarctica and see penguins.

### 6

I prefer the summer. It's **light** for 19 hours and we enjoy the **long** days.

### 7

Yes, I do. Ushuaia is my hometown, and I love my life here.

## 2 GRAMMAR word order in questions

a Re-order the words to make questions. Then answer them from memory.

- Griselda from where is \_\_\_\_\_?
- Argentina in Ushuaia is \_\_\_\_\_?
- do tourists penguins see where \_\_\_\_\_?
- does museums Ushuaia have \_\_\_\_\_?

b ➤ **p.104 Grammar Bank 7A.** Learn more about word order in questions and practice it.

## 3 VOCABULARY common verbs 2

a Look at the interview in exercise 1 again. Match 1–6 to a–f.

- |                              |       |   |                |
|------------------------------|-------|---|----------------|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> e | go to | a | TV             |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/>   | visit | b | boat trips     |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/>   | go    | c | computer games |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/>   | take  | d | our city       |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/>   | watch | e | bed            |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/>   | play  | f | ice skating    |

b ➤ **p.126 Vocabulary Bank Common verbs 2.** Do part 1.

## 4 PRONUNCIATION /ɛr/, /ɑ/, /aʊ/, and /y/

a (3 13))) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

	chair	where	there	their	hair	
	clock	want	watch	hot	golf	
	owl	how	town	mountains	outside	
	yacht	you	yes	usually	museum	computer

b (3 14))) Listen and say the sentences. Copy the sounds and rhythm.

**Where** do you **live**? Over **there**.

Do you **want** to play **golf**?

What **museums** do **you** **usually** go to?

**How** do you **relax**? I **walk** in the **mountains**.

## 5 SPEAKING

a Use the words to make questions. Then ask and answer with a partner.

- / play sports?
- What / be / favorite sport?
- / watch TV in the evening?
- What shows / watch?

Do you play sports? (Yes, I do.)

What's your favorite sport?

b Find a new partner. Ask and answer questions about your old partner.

Does she play sports? (Yes, she does.)

What's her favorite sport?

c ➤ **Communication Weekdays and weekends p.80**

Can I  
park here?

No, you can't.  
You can park in  
the parking lot.

# 7B You can't park here

## 1 GRAMMAR can / can't

a **3 15** Cover the dialogues and look at the pictures. What do you think the people are saying? Listen and check.

- 1 **Policeman** Excuse me.  
You can't park there.
- Woman** No? Why not?
- Policeman** The sign says,  
"No Parking."
- Woman** Oh, I'm sorry, officer.  
Where can I park  
near here?
- Policeman** You can park  
over there, ma'am,  
in the parking lot.
- Woman** Thank you, officer.



- 2 **Ellie** Hi, Matt.
- Matt** Hi. Who's this?
- Ellie** It's me, Ellie.  
How are you?
- Matt** Oh, fine, thanks.
- Ellie** Matt, can you come  
to dinner on Friday?
- Matt** On Friday?  
Oh, I'm really sorry.  
I can't come. It's my  
girlfriend's birthday.
- Ellie** Your girlfriend?
- Matt** Yes. Lucy, from work.
- Ellie** Oh. Lucy.
- Matt** Sorry about dinner.
- Ellie** That's OK. Bye.



b Listen again and read the dialogues.  
Answer the questions.

- Why does the policeman speak to the woman?
- Where does the woman park at the end of the conversation?
- Is the policeman angry 😡 with her?
- What's Ellie's plan for Friday?
- Does Matt say yes or no to Ellie? Why?
- Is Ellie happy 😊 or sad 😞 at the end of the conversation?

c Look at dialogues 1 and 2. Complete the sentences.



+	You <u>can</u> park over there, ma'am, in the parking lot.
-	Excuse me. You _____ park there. I'm really sorry. I _____ come.
?	_____ you come to dinner on Friday? Where _____ I park near here?

d **p.104 Grammar Bank 7B.** Learn more about *can / can't* and practice it.

## 2 PRONUNCIATION

/æ/ and /ə/; sentence rhythm

a **3 17** Listen and copy the sounds and sentences. Copy the rhythm.

 cat	Can I park here? Yes, you <b>can</b> . No, you <b>can't</b> . You <b>can't</b> park here.
 computer	Where <b>can</b> I park? You <b>can</b> park here.

b **3 18** Listen. Can you hear the difference?

- a We can park here.      3 a You can sit here.  
b We can't park here.      b You can't sit here.
- a I can help you.      4 a Mark can go with me.  
b I can't help you.      b Mark can't go with me.

c **3 19** Listen. Circle a or b.

d Practice the dialogues in exercise 1a with a partner.

e Ask and answer questions with a partner. Give affirmative (✓) or negative (✗) short answers.

- I / park here ✗
- you / come to dinner ✓
- we / swim here ✓
- I / watch TV on the bus ✗
- I / have a coffee ✓
- we / have lunch tomorrow ✗

Can I park here?  No, you can't.

### 3 VOCABULARY common verbs 2

a What do these signs mean? Explain with *You can...* / *You can't...*

b ► p.126 **Vocabulary Bank** *Common verbs 2*. Do part 2.

c In pairs, complete the sentences with a verb.



1 You can't \_\_\_\_\_ here.

2 You can \_\_\_\_\_ by credit card here.

3 You can't \_\_\_\_\_ your cell phone here.

4 You can \_\_\_\_\_ money here.



5 You can't \_\_\_\_\_ fast here.

6 You can \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet here.

7 You can't \_\_\_\_\_ photos here.

8 You can't \_\_\_\_\_ soccer here.

d Cover the sentences and look at the signs. Say what they mean.

### 4 SPEAKING & WRITING

a Answer the questions with a partner.

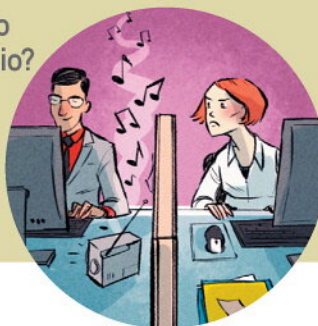
#### AT SCHOOL can you...

- \* come into class if you're late?
- \* go home for lunch?
- \* use your cell phone in class?



#### AT WORK can you...

- \* start and finish work when you want?
- \* send personal emails?
- \* take a break when you want?
- \* listen to the radio?



#### AT HOME can you...

- \* go out with friends after midnight?
- \* watch TV during dinner?
- \* get up late during the week?
- \* wear shoes in the house?



b Write two things you can do and two you can't do i) at school / work and ii) at home.

*At work, I can go home at 4:00 on Fridays, and...*

*I can't...*

*At home, I can't use my phone after 10:00...*

# Practical English What's the date today?

## 1 MONTHS

- a When are these holidays? Match them with the correct month.

February    October    December



1 New Year's Eve \_\_\_\_\_



2 Halloween \_\_\_\_\_



3 Valentine's Day \_\_\_\_\_

- b ► **p.127 Vocabulary Bank** *Months and ordinal numbers*. Do part 1.

- c Answer the questions in groups.

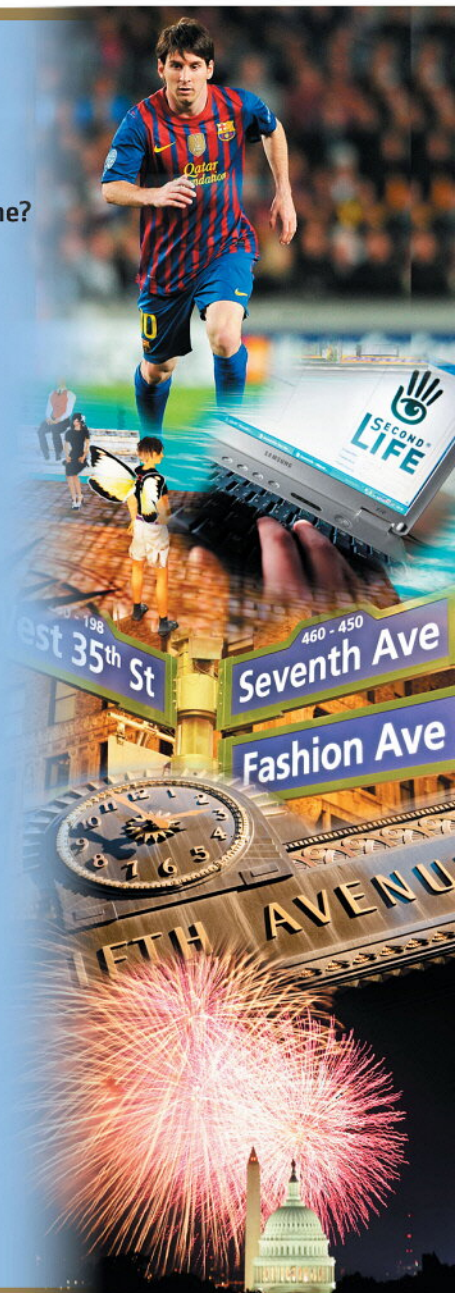
- 1 Which month sometimes has 29 days?
- 2 Which month has only three letters?
- 3 Which three months begin with the letter j?
- 4 Which four months end in -er?

## 2 ORDINAL NUMBERS

- a Do the quiz with a partner.

### QUIZ

- 1 This soccer star's last name is Messi. What is his **first** name?  
a Lionel                      b Pedro                      c Ricardo
- 2 What is **Second** Life?  
a a movie                      b a computer game    c a TV show
- 3 Tokyo and Seoul are the two biggest cities in the world. What is the **third**?  
a Mexico City                b Mumbai                c Shanghai
- 4 What country celebrates on July **fourth**?  
a Canada                      b Mexico                      c the US
- 5 Which city has a famous street called **Fifth** Avenue?  
a London                      b New York                c Sydney
- 6 What is the **sixth** letter of the alphabet?  
a F                              b G                              c H
- 7 What is the **seventh** month of the year?  
a June                              b July                              c August
- 8 What is the **eighth** book in the Harry Potter series?  
a *Harry Potter and the Sorcerer's Stone*  
b *Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows*  
c The series has only seven books, not eight.
- 9 In the US, what kind of school starts at **ninth** grade?  
a junior high school    b high school                c college



- b ► **p.127 Vocabulary Bank** *Months and ordinal numbers*. Do part 2.

- c (3 24))) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.



thumb

think Thursday three third seventh ninth



mother

the they then their

- d (3 25))) Listen. Say the ordinal number.

))) one { first

### 3 SAYING THE DATE

- a 3 26))) Listen and complete the dialogues with an ordinal number.



- 1 A What's the date today?  
B It's May \_\_\_\_\_.  
A Really? I think it's May \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 A When's your birthday?  
B July \_\_\_\_\_.

#### Saying the date

##### We say

April first

June second

March twenty-third

May fourth

July twentieth

##### We write

April 1st / April 1 / 4/1

June 2nd / June 2 / 6/2

March 23rd / March 23 / 3/23

May 4th / May 4 / 5/4

July 20th / July 20 / 7/20

- b 3 27))) Listen and repeat the dates. Practice saying them.

**January 1st**

**February 2nd**

**March 8th**

**April 9th**

**May 11th**

**June 14th**

**July 18th**

**August 20th**

**September 22nd**

**October 23rd**

**November 30th**

**December 31st**

- c Ask and answer the questions in pairs.

*What's the date today?*

*What's tomorrow's date?*

- d Say the dates of the holidays in 1a. Then say the dates of two other holidays you know.

*New Year's Eve is December 31st.*

- e Stand up. Ask other students: *When's your birthday?* Make a class list.

- f Tell a partner three birthdays that are important to you.

*My girlfriend's birthday is on September 2nd.*

### 4 PEOPLE ON THE STREET

When's your birthday?

What do you usually do on your birthday?



Ria

- a 3 28))) Watch or listen to Ria. When's her birthday?
- b 3 29))) Watch or listen. What does she usually do on her birthday?
- c 3 30))) Watch or listen to four more people. Write their birthdays and complete the sentences.



Max

**Birthday** \_\_\_\_\_

"Normally I have a small \_\_\_\_\_, I have some \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ some presents."



Cristina

**Birthday** \_\_\_\_\_

"I usually spend time with my \_\_\_\_\_, or have \_\_\_\_\_, see my \_\_\_\_\_."



Ivan

**Birthday** \_\_\_\_\_

"I usually celebrate my birthday with my \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_."



James

**Birthday** \_\_\_\_\_

"I usually \_\_\_\_\_ for a meal with my family – with my \_\_\_\_\_ and my \_\_\_\_\_."

- d In pairs, ask and answer the questions in the box.

# 8A What are they doing?

What's she doing?

She's playing the piano.

## 1 GRAMMAR present continuous

a 3 31))) Mia goes all over the world for her job. Listen to the phone call. Fill in the blanks with the words from the list.



croissant espresso the radio French

Amy Hello?

Mia Hey, Amy. It's Mia!

Amy Hi, Mia! Where are you this week?

Mia Take a guess! I'm drinking Italian<sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
It's very good.

Amy Oh, are you in Italy?

Mia No, I'm not. I'm eating a <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
and the waiter is speaking  
<sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to me.

Amy French food, a French waiter...  
You're in France.

Mia No. Oh, the waiters are listening  
to <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ now. Listen.

Amy That's Brazilian music.  
Are you in Brazil?

Mia No, I'm not.

Amy OK. I give up.  
Where are you?



b What do you think? Where is Mia?

c 3 32))) Listen and check. Where is Mia?

d ► p.106 Grammar Bank 8A. Learn more about the present continuous and practice it.

e Underline the present continuous verbs in the dialogue.

f 3 34))) Listen. What is Mia doing?  
*She's driving.*

## 2 PRONUNCIATION /ʊ/, /u/, and /ŋ/

a 3 35))) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

	bull	good neighborhood sugar woman
	boot	you food do student
	singer	drinking eating speaking listening

b Read the dialogue in 1a. Practice it with a partner.

c Look at pictures 1–6. Practice with a partner.

What's she doing? She's...



### 3 VOCABULARY verb phrases

a 3 36))) Listen and repeat the verb phrases in 1–8.



1 stay in a hotel



2 carry bags



3 wear a suit



4 take a train



5 meet new people



6 enjoy a meal



7 pay the bill



8 have fun

b Complete the phrases with a verb from a.

1 enjoy a trip

3 \_\_\_\_\_ a good time

5 \_\_\_\_\_ a friend

7 \_\_\_\_\_ a suitcase

2 \_\_\_\_\_ boots

4 \_\_\_\_\_ for lunch

6 \_\_\_\_\_ in a tent

8 \_\_\_\_\_ a plane

### 4 READING

a Look at the photos. Where are the people?

b Read the letter and email. Do these sentences describe Lucy, Peter, or both of them? Check (✓) the correct answer.

	Lucy	Peter	Both
1 He / She is staying in a tent.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 He / She is traveling for business.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 He / She is meeting nice people.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 He / She is learning words in a new language.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5 He / She is going to bed late.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6 He / She is having a good time.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

c Look at the **highlighted** words and guess their meaning. Check with your teacher or a dictionary.

1

Mr. Joe Noonan  
579 7th Ave S.W.  
Bernard, Iowa 52032  
USA

Dear Grandpa Joe,

Hi from Peru! I'm here with my friend Wendy to see Machu Picchu. It's a very old, very beautiful place in the mountains. You can take a train there, but we're walking. It takes three days. The **views** are great.

We're having a lot of fun, but it's hard work! We're very tired in the evening. We go to bed at 8:00 p.m.! We're staying in a tent. Our **guides** are carrying our bags and making our meals. They're very nice. They're teaching us words in Spanish and in Quechua – that's another language here.

See you soon!

Love,

Lucy



2

To: Stuart, Sally; Stuart, Ethel; Lopez, Amy; Tran, Vu; Smythe, Marcus...  
From: Peter Stuart  
Subject: **Hi from Dubai**

Hi all,

I'm here in Dubai! I'm staying in a **five-star** hotel. It's very nice, but very expensive. I'm glad my company is paying for the room!

I'm meeting great people. They are very nice to **guests** here. They always give you coffee or tea. Everyone speaks English very well. That's good because I can't read the signs!

It's very hot – over 35 degrees today – and I'm wearing a suit. That isn't **comfortable**. But you can also ski here! A big mall has an **indoor** ski area with real snow.

I'm really enjoying my trip. The only bad thing is the **jet lag**. I go to bed at 1:00 a.m., then I get up at 5:00 a.m.!

See you all next week!

Best,

Peter



### 5 WRITING

► p.85 Writing An email. Imagine you're on vacation. Write an email about it.

### 6 SPEAKING

a Write the names of six people (family or friends). What do you think they are doing right now?

b Tell your partner about your people. Are any of them doing the same thing?

My sister is visiting Canada.  
She's staying in a hotel in the mountains.  
I think my mother is...

### 7 3 37))) SONG Singing in the Rain 🎵

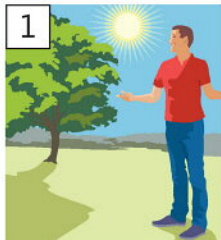
What are you doing today?

I usually walk to work, but today I'm working at home.

# 8B Today is different

## 1 VOCABULARY the weather

a (338) Listen and repeat the weather words.



It's sunny.



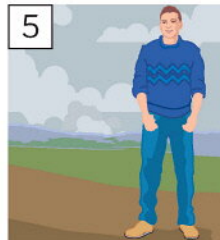
It's hot.



It's cold.



It's windy.



It's cloudy.



It's raining.



It's snowing.

b Cover the words. Describe the pictures.  
Ask *How's the weather?*

Picture 1. *How's the weather?* *It's sunny.*

c How's the weather today? Tell a partner.

## 2 GRAMMAR

present continuous or simple present?

a Cover the text and look at the pictures.  
What are they doing?

b (339) Listen and read the people's answers.  
Who says each answer? Write the names.

c ► p.106 Grammar Bank 8B. Learn more about present continuous and simple present and practice them.



Susan



Ben



Jack and Kayla



Emma

## 3 PRONUNCIATION /ɔ/, /ou/, and /ei/

a (341) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 saw	walk always office daughter
 phone	snow cold home go
 train	today play take email

b (342) Listen. Practice the sentences.

My daughter always walks to the office.

It's cold and snowing at home.

I'm taking the train today.

### It's snowing today and it's May! What are you doing?

- \_\_\_\_\_  
"I usually walk to work, but today I'm taking the train."
- \_\_\_\_\_  
"I'm working at home today. It's cold outside!"
- \_\_\_\_\_  
"We always go to school on Tuesdays, but we aren't at school today. We're playing outside!"
- \_\_\_\_\_  
"I'm wearing snow boots to my office today. I don't usually do that."

## 4 READING

- a Read the article and choose the correct title.
- Working on vacation
  - Life as a nurse
  - Staying at a hotel



- b Answer the questions.

- Why is Darlene working at the hotel?
- What is Vocation Vacations?
- Who is Chloe Tuttle?
- Is Vocation Vacations a small business?

- c Where does Darlene do these things?  
Check (✓) the boxes.

	At home	At the hotel	Both
1 get up early	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 make breakfast	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 make dinner	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 carry bags	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- d Look at the **highlighted** words and guess their meaning.  
Check with your teacher or a dictionary.

- e What job do you want to try?

## NEW IDEAS

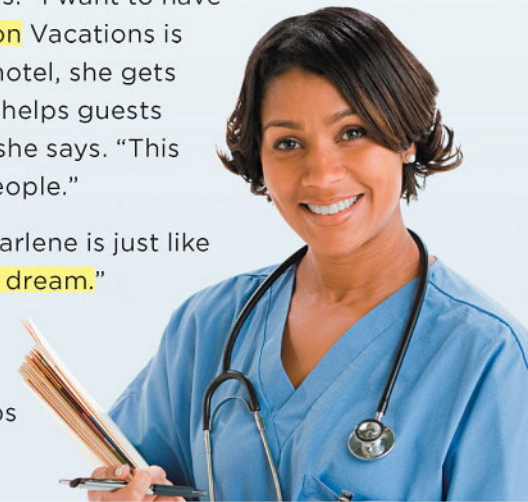
Every day, Darlene Proctor gets up at 5:00 a.m., makes breakfast, and goes to work as a nurse. She goes home at 9:00 p.m., makes dinner, and goes to bed. But today, she's on vacation. She's at Big Mill **Bed and Breakfast**, a beautiful hotel in North Carolina. But she's not relaxing. She's working!

**Is this really a vacation?** Well, yes and no.

Darlene is working here because she is **curious** about other jobs. "I like my job but I have a dream," she says. "I want to have my own hotel." A company called **Vocation Vacations** is helping Darlene try a new **career**. At the hotel, she gets up early, cleans rooms, carries bags, and helps guests from around the world. "It's hard work," she says. "This morning I'm making breakfasts for 30 people."

The hotel's **owner**, Chloe Tuttle, says, "Darlene is just like me 20 years ago. I hope she **follows her dream**."

Vocation Vacations is a big business now. It has over 125 different careers people can try, and they have more jobs every day.



## 5 SPEAKING

- a Ask your partner the questions. Check (✓) your partner's *yes* answers.

A Are you wearing a hat? B No, I'm not.

A Do you usually wear ...?

	Are you ... ?	Do you usually ... ?
	wear	
1 a hat	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 glasses	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 a watch	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	carry	
4 a big bag	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5 an umbrella	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6 a cell phone	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	enjoy	
7 class	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8 the weather	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- b Work with another pair. How is today different for you and your partner? Make three sentences.

Leila doesn't usually carry an umbrella, but she's carrying an umbrella today.

# 7&8 Review and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a or b.

- 1 What \_\_\_\_\_ in the winter?  
a do people do b do people
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ your bag?  
a This is b Is this
- 3 **A** \_\_\_\_\_ sports?  
**B** No, he prefers computer games.  
a Does he like b Does like he
- 4 **A** \_\_\_\_\_ the summer in Argentina?  
**B** It's from October to March.  
a When does b When is
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ park here?  
a Can I b Do I can
- 6 You \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet here.  
a no can use b can't use
- 7 **A** Can they come to dinner tomorrow?  
**B** No, they \_\_\_\_\_.  
a can't b don't
- 8 Lisa \_\_\_\_\_ sit here.  
a can b cans
- 9 Are you \_\_\_\_\_ TV right now?  
a watch b watching
- 10 She's not \_\_\_\_\_ a cell phone.  
a using b using
- 11 He \_\_\_\_\_ a book right now.  
a reading b is reading
- 12 We're \_\_\_\_\_ in the ocean.  
a swimming b swimming
- 13 **A** \_\_\_\_\_ doing right now?  
**B** I'm making dinner.  
a What you b What are you
- 14 \_\_\_\_\_ to work by train?  
a Do you usually go  
b Are you usually going
- 15 I usually walk to work, but today \_\_\_\_\_.  
a I drive b I'm driving

## VOCABULARY

a Complete the sentences with a verb.

- 1 It's raining. Let's **st** \_\_\_\_\_ inside and watch TV.
- 2 I always **pl** \_\_\_\_\_ computer games after school.
- 3 People **t** \_\_\_\_\_ boat trips in the summer here.
- 4 When do people usually **v** \_\_\_\_\_ your city?
- 5 Can I **p** \_\_\_\_\_ by credit card?
- 6 You can't **t** \_\_\_\_\_ photos in this museum.
- 7 Do you usually **w** \_\_\_\_\_ a suit at work?
- 8 Here's your pizza. **En** \_\_\_\_\_ your meal!
- 9 I always **h** \_\_\_\_\_ fun on vacation.
- 10 On the weekend, we sometimes **w** \_\_\_\_\_ in the park.

b Circle the correct weather word.



1 It's *snowing* / *cold*.



3 It's *sunny* / *snowing*.



2 It's *windy* / *raining*.

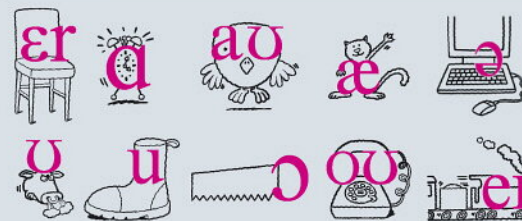


4 It's *raining* / *cloudy*.

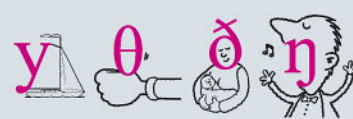
## PRONUNCIATION

a Can you remember these words and sounds?

vowels



consonants




b ► **p.132-134 Sound Bank.** Check the words and sounds, and practice saying the example words.

c Underline the stressed syllable.

1 com|pu|ter 2 en|joy 3 pi|an|o 4 Au|gust 5 se|ven|teenth

## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

- a Read the text. Who is happy about the train problem? Who is not?



**The trains aren't working!  
How are you getting to work?**

The weather is very hot and trains are having problems this morning. Some trains are one or two hours late, and some are broken.

So how are people getting to work today? **Check out the messages below.** A lot of our readers can't use the train today, so they are walking, riding bikes, and more!

**JESSIE LEE:** The trains aren't working, but it's OK. I'm going to work by bike. I'm having a good time. My bike is fast!

**RICHARD JONES:** I'm walking to work right now. It's a LONG walk and it's very hot. I'm not enjoying this.

**MARISOL DIAZ:** Why are the trains broken? I can't walk to work – my job is very far from here. I can't go by taxi – it's too expensive. What can I do?

**SERGIO SANTOS:** What an interesting morning! I'm walking in the park with a LOT of other people. I'm meeting new people, getting exercise, and having fun.

- b Answer the questions.
- Who is walking to work? Who is going by bike?
  - Are the people in the text going to work by taxi?
  - Why is each person happy or unhappy?
- c How do you usually go to work or school?

## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

3 43))) Listen and choose the right answer.

- What do people do in January?
  - Go to the movies.
  - Go to museums.
- When does the woman go to the gym?
  - During the week.
  - On the weekend.
- Where does the man park?
  - In the parking lot.
  - On the street.
- What languages does the woman speak?
  - Korean.
  - Korean and Chinese.
- When is Lisa's birthday?
  - February 7th.
  - February 17th.
- What is the man doing?
  - Reading.
  - Writing an email.
- The husband is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - playing sports
  - watching sports
- The woman \_\_\_\_\_ a suit to work.
  - is wearing
  - always wears

## CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Check (✓) the boxes.

Can you...?

- |                                                               |                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 say what people can do in your town                         | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 2 ask about people's weekdays and weekends                    | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes I can.  |
| 3 say dates                                                   | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 4 talk about activities you are doing now                     | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 5 talk about the weather                                      | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 6 talk about what you usually do and what you are doing today | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |



**Short movies A day off**

Watch and enjoy the movie.

# 9A In the jungle in Guatemala

## 1 VOCABULARY hotels

a Look at these things from a hotel room. What are they?



1



2



3



4



5



6



7

b ➤ p.128 Vocabulary Bank *Hotels*.

## 2 GRAMMAR *there is / there are*

- a Look at the picture of Tikal National Park in Guatemala. Do you want to visit it?
- b (3 46))) Kim and Matt are planning their trip to Tikal. Does Kim like the hotel? Does Matt like it?
- c Listen again and read the dialogue. Complete the missing words.



**Kim** This is a good <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. There are only three hotels in the park, and people say this is the best.

**Matt** Oh, really?

**Kim** Yes. It's very basic. There's electricity, but only from 6:00 to 10:00 p.m.

**Matt** What? Only from 6:00 to 10:00?

**Kim** Yes. There isn't electricity after 10:00.

**Matt** Hmm. I don't know....

**Kim** Look. This is one of the rooms. It's nice! There are two beds, and there's a <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.

**Matt** Is there a <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_?

**Kim** Yes, there is. There's a <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, too.

**Matt** But there isn't a <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ in the room.

**Kim** That's OK. We can read <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.

**Matt** Not after 10:00!

**Kim** Oh, look. There's a <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.

**Matt** That's good. Are there any <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_?

**Kim** Yes. There's one. So, do you like it?

**Matt** Uh...

d Read the dialogue again. Underline examples of *there is / are* [+], [-], and [?].

e ➤ p.108 Grammar Bank 9A. Learn more about *there is / there are* and practice them.

f Practice the dialogue in 2c in pairs.

g (3 48))) Listen to the rest of the conversation. Do Kim and Matt decide to stay at the hotel? Why (not)? Do you like the hotel? Why (not)?



### 3 READING

a Look at the photos of three unusual hotels. Match the photos and information.

#### AMAZING HOTELS!

**A IN** an airplane:  
Honecker Hotel, the Netherlands

This plane from the 1960s is now a five-star hotel. The design is very modern and cool. There is only one room in the plane. It has a bed, three TVs, a hot tub, and a kitchen. There is a very interesting view—you can watch planes take off and land at Teuge Airport. However, the hotel doesn't fly!

**Location:** Teuge, the Netherlands  
**Number of rooms:** 1  
**Price:** \$470

**B ON** a mountain:  
Hakone Ginyu, Japan

A relaxing hotel with beautiful views of the mountains. There is a swimming pool and a traditional Japanese spa called an *onsen*. Every room has a hot tub, but there isn't a TV and there aren't any beds. You sleep on a *futon*—a traditional Japanese mattress. You also wear traditional Japanese clothes and eat a traditional meal. Children and families are welcome.

**Location:** Miyanoshita, Japan  
**Number of rooms:** 20  
**Price:** \$365 – \$821

**C UNDER** the ground:  
Hobbit Hotel, New Zealand

New Zealand is famous for Peter Jackson's *Lord of the Rings* movies, and the Hobbit Hotel looks just like the houses in the movies. The rooms are under the ground, but there are windows with pretty views. It's great for families. Six people can stay in a hobbit house, and there is a kitchen and a TV.

**Location:** Waitomo, New Zealand  
**Number of rooms:** 2 in the Hobbit Motel; 10 total  
**Price:** \$200



b Read the information about the three hotels. Check (✓) the boxes.

	A	B	C
1 There's a kitchen in the room.	✓	—	✓
2 It's a very traditional hotel.	—	—	—
3 It's a good place for families.	—	—	—
4 There are good views.	—	—	—
5 There's a swimming pool.	—	—	—
6 You can watch TV in the room.	—	—	—

c Do you like the hotels? Which one do you prefer?

### 4 PRONUNCIATION /ɛr/, /ɪr/, and /ɔɪ/

a (3 49))) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 <b>chair</b>	there where very airport
 <b>ear</b>	here we're year near
 <b>boy</b>	enjoy toy toilet

b Make true (+) or false (−) statements.

#### in your classroom

a board windows a table a TV  
chairs a lamp photos computers

#### in your school

a library a restaurant a parking lot  
a swimming pool toilets

There's a board. There aren't any windows.

### 5 SPEAKING

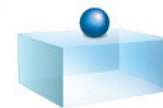
a Write *in*, *on*, or *under* for pictures 1–3.



1 \_\_\_\_\_



2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_

b Ask and answer questions in pairs about the remote control.



1



2



3



4



5



6

Where's the remote control? It's on the TV.

c ► **Communication** Is there a TV? Where is it?  
A p.81 B p.82. Draw things in the hotel rooms.

# 9B Before they were stars...



## 1 GRAMMAR simple past: *be*

a Look at the photos of some famous people.  
Who...

- is a singer?
- makes movies?
- is an actor?
- has a TV show?

b Can you guess their old jobs? Write the names.

- \_\_\_\_\_ was an office worker.
- \_\_\_\_\_ was a waiter and a DJ.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 's first job was at a newspaper.
- \_\_\_\_\_ was a dancer on a TV show.
- \_\_\_\_\_ was a clown.
- \_\_\_\_\_ was a construction worker in Australia.
- \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ were waitresses.
- \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ were salespeople.

c 3 50))) Listen and check.

d Complete the chart.

Present	Past
Hugh Jackman <b>is</b> an actor.	He _____ a clown.
They <b>are</b> famous.	They _____ waitresses.

e ► p.108 Grammar Bank 9B. Learn more about simple past of *be* and practice it.

## 2 PRONUNCIATION /ər/ and was / were

a 3 52))) Listen and repeat the words and sound.



bird

first were her work nurse

b 3 53))) Listen and repeat the sounds and sentences.  
Copy the rhythm.



bird

**Were** they **famous**?  
**Yes**, they **were**.  
**No**, they **weren't**. They **weren't** famous.



up

**Was** he a **waiter**?  
**Yes**, he **was**.  
**No**, he **wasn't**. He **wasn't** a **waiter**.



**weren't and wasn't**

We usually say *weren't* as one syllable: /wɜrnt/  
*Wasn't* has two syllables: /'wɜznt/

c 3 54))) Listen and say the sentences in the past.

))) She's a waitress. ( She was a waitress.

### 3 VOCABULARY *in, at, on*: places

a Where do they work? Write the places.

- 1 A teacher works in a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 A salesperson works in a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 An office worker works in an \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 A waiter works in a \_\_\_\_\_.

b ➤ **p.129 Vocabulary Bank Places.**

c Complete the sentences from **1b**. Write *in, at, or on*.

His first job was \_\_\_\_\_ a newspaper.

She was a dancer \_\_\_\_\_ a TV show.

He was a construction worker \_\_\_\_\_ Australia.

d **3 56**))) Complete the chart with *in, at, or on*. Listen and check. Repeat the sentences.

WHERE WERE YOU YESTERDAY?		
1 I was _____	2 I was _____	3 I was _____
home	bed	a bus
work	the kitchen	a train
school	a car	a plane
the beach	Chicago	a boat
the gym	Australia	the street
the airport	a meeting	
the bank	the park	
the movie theater		
a restaurant		

e Test a partner. **A** (book open) say a place.

**B** (book closed) say the phrase. Then change roles.

kitchen } *in the kitchen*

f **3 57**))) Where was Jason yesterday? Listen and complete the sentences.

- 1 At 6:00 \_\_\_\_\_ *He was in bed* \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 At 8:00 \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 At 9:00 \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 At 11:00 \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 At 3:00 \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 At 4:00 \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 At 7:00 \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 At 10:00 \_\_\_\_\_ again!

### 4 SPEAKING

a Look at the pictures for two minutes. Try to remember who the people are and where they were yesterday at three o'clock.



b ➤ **Communication** Where were they?

**A** p.81 **B** p.82.

c In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

- 1 Where were you yesterday at 7:00 / 10:00 a.m.?
- 2 Where were you yesterday at 4:00 p.m. / 6:30 p.m.?
- 3 Where were you at 10:00 / 11:30 last night?
- 4 Where were you last Friday / Saturday night?

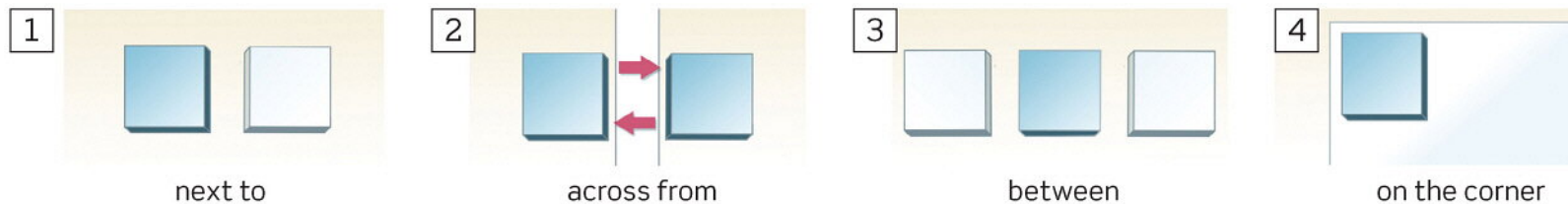
Where were you yesterday at 7:00 a.m.?

I was in...

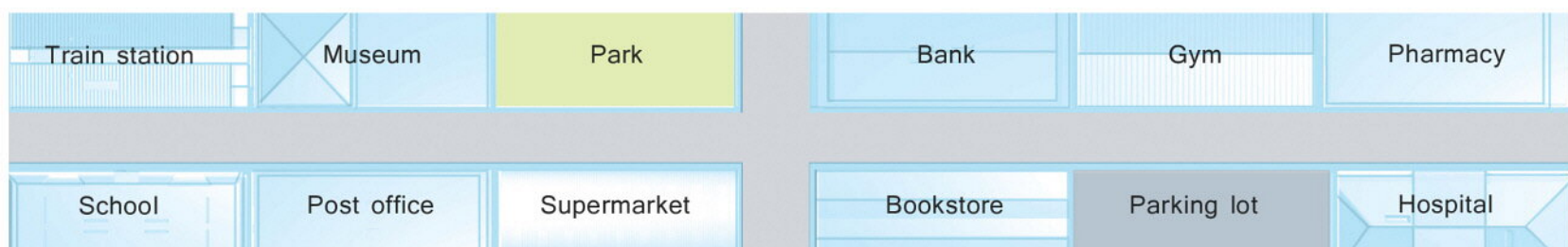
# Practical English Is there a bank near here?

## 1 ASKING WHERE PLACES ARE

a 358))) Listen and repeat the words.



b 359))) Look at the picture of a street. Listen and name the places.



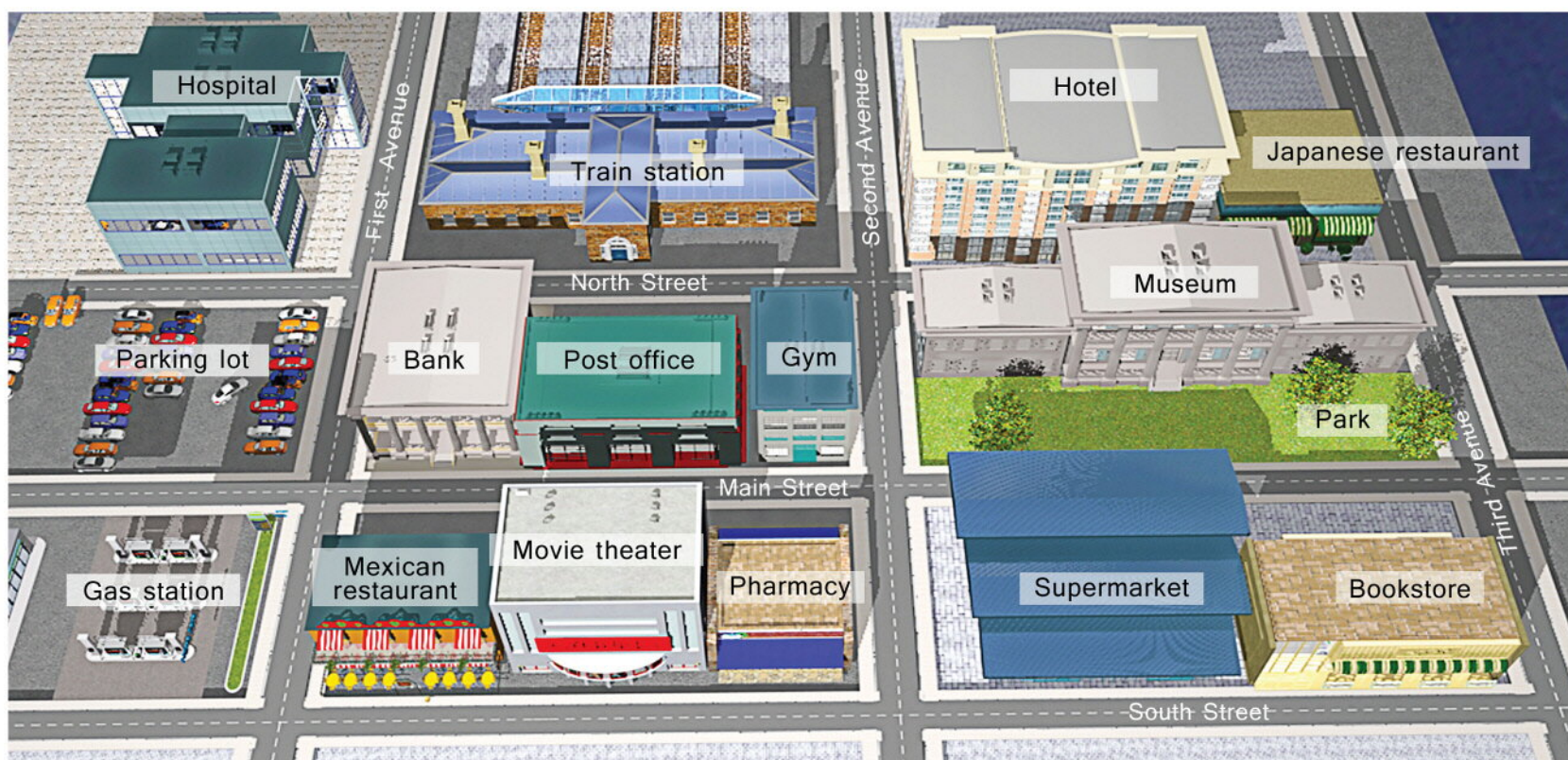
c Ask and answer questions about the places in b. *Where's the park?* *It's on the corner, next to the museum.*

d 360))) Look at the map and the names of the streets and buildings. Listen and complete the dialogue.

A Excuse me. Is there a <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ near here?

B Yes, there's one on Main Street, between <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and Second Avenue. It's next to the <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

A Thanks.



e 361))) Listen and repeat the dialogue.  
Copy the rhythm and polite intonation.

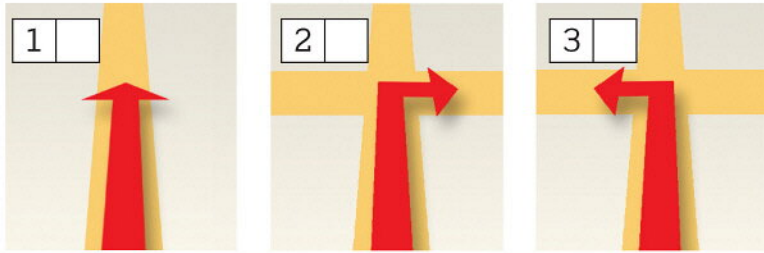
f Practice in pairs. Choose places on the map.

*Excuse me. Is there a...near here?* *Yes, there's one on...*

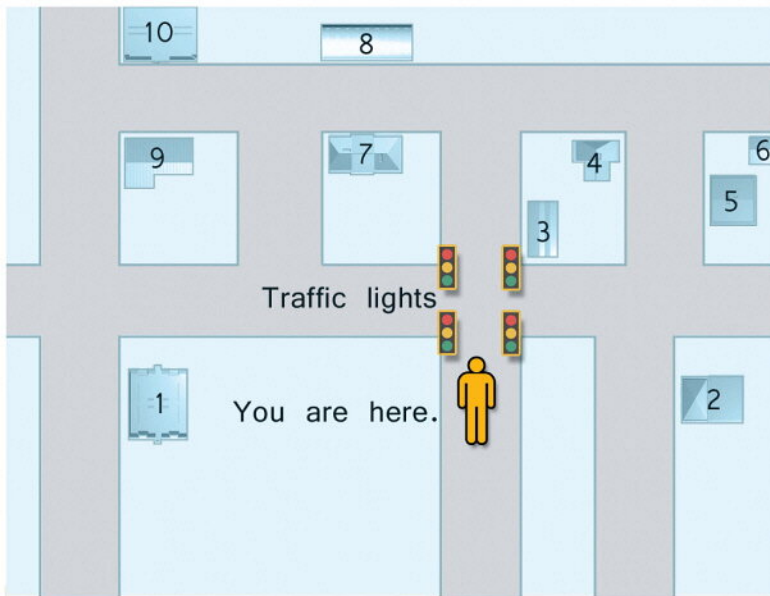
## 2 UNDERSTANDING & GIVING DIRECTIONS

- a 362))) Match the words and pictures. Listen and repeat.

A Turn right. B Turn left. C Go straight ahead.



- b 363))) Listen to the dialogue. Which building (1–10) is the bus station?



**Tourist** Excuse me. Can you help me?

**Woman** Sure.

**Tourist** Where's the bus station, please?

**Woman** Go straight ahead, and make a right.  
Turn right again, and it's on the left.

**Tourist** Thanks very much.

**Woman** You're welcome.

- c 364))) Listen to two more tourists. Which building (1–10) is...?  
the pharmacy \_\_\_\_\_ the museum \_\_\_\_\_

- d In pairs, practice the dialogue in b.

- e In pairs, role-play directions. Use the map in 2b.

**A** Ask **B** for directions to **the hotel**. You speak first.  
Give **B** directions to **the hospital**. Choose a building 1–10.

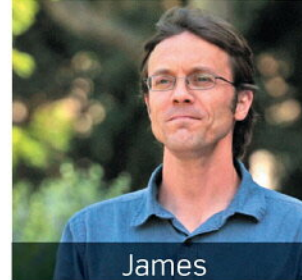
**B** Give **A** directions to **the hotel**. Choose a building 1–10.  
Ask **A** for directions to **the hospital**. You speak first.

*Excuse me. Can you help me?  
Where's the hotel, please?* *(Go straight ahead,  
and then turn...)*

## 3 VIDEO PEOPLE ON THE STREET

Is there a / an ... near here?

- a 365))) Watch or listen to James. Write the place and complete the directions.



1 **Place** \_\_\_\_\_

2 **Directions** "Yes, there's one  
on \_\_\_\_\_ Street, next to  
the \_\_\_\_\_."

- b 366))) Now watch or listen to four more people and complete the information.



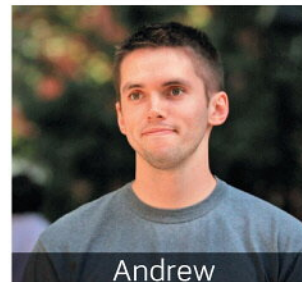
1 **Place** \_\_\_\_\_

2 **Directions** "There is a \_\_\_\_\_  
on \_\_\_\_\_ Street, \_\_\_\_\_  
6th and 7th."



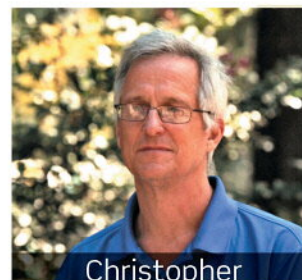
1 **Place** \_\_\_\_\_

2 **Directions** "Yes, straight  
ahead, and it's \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_."



1 **Place** \_\_\_\_\_

2 **Directions** "There's  
a \_\_\_\_\_ across from  
the \_\_\_\_\_."



1 **Place** \_\_\_\_\_

2 **Directions** "Yes, it's NYU.  
It's right \_\_\_\_\_ the  
\_\_\_\_\_ here."

- c In pairs, ask and answer the question in the box.  
Ask about places from the map on page 56 or your own idea.

# 10A It changed my life

## 1 GRAMMAR simple past: regular verbs

- a School Year Abroad is a student exchange program. Every year, hundreds of high school students study abroad and stay with a host family. McKenzie Nagle was in Vietnam last year with 15 other American students. Match the sentences and pictures.

### My first day in Vietnam!



I **learned** how to say *chào* (hello) and *cảm ơn* (thank you).

1 My mother **cried** at the airport in New York.

We **arrived** in Vietnam. It was very hot! I **didn't like** that.

We **walked** to a restaurant for dinner. The traffic was crazy!

I **talked** to the other students on the plane. I was nervous, but excited!

Our language teachers **greeted** us at the hotel. We **started** our first class in the evening.

- b 4 2))) Listen and check. Were you right?
- c Read the story again and complete the chart. What letters do you add to make the **+** past form? Which verb is in the **-** form?

Present	Past
My mother <b>cries</b> .	My mother ____.
I <b>talk</b> to the students.	I ____ to the students.
We <b>arrive</b> in Vietnam.	We ____ in Vietnam.
I <b>don't like</b> that.	I ____ like that.
Our teachers <b>greet</b> us.	Our teachers ____ us.
We <b>start</b> our first class.	We ____ our first class.
I <b>learn</b> how to say hello.	I ____ how to say hello.
We <b>walk</b> to a restaurant.	We ____ to a restaurant.

- d ► p.110 Grammar Bank 10A. Learn more about simple past regular verbs and practice it.

## 2 PRONUNCIATION

### regular simple past endings

- a 4 4))) Listen and repeat the sounds and sentences.

dog	My mother <b>cried</b> . We <b>arrived</b> in Vietnam.
tie	I <b>talked</b> to the students. We <b>walked</b> to a restaurant.
/ɪd/	Our teachers <b>greeted</b> us. We <b>started</b> our first class.

- b 4 5))) Listen and repeat the story in 1a. Then cover the sentences and look at the pictures. Tell McKenzie's story.

### 3 SPEAKING

- a What did you do last weekend / last night / this morning? Tell a partner. Make affirmative ☒ or negative ☐ sentences.

last weekend	last night	this morning
visit a museum	watch TV	listen to the radio
play sports	study English	walk to work / school
clean the house	check my email	exercise

*I didn't visit a museum last weekend.* *I talked to a friend...*

- b Work with a new partner. Ask and answer about the activities in a.

*Did you visit a museum?* *No, I didn't.*

- c In pairs, ask and answer questions about the story in 1a.

- McKenzie / learn to say hello
- his mother / cry
- he / like the hot weather
- he / walk to a restaurant for lunch
- he / talk to the other students on the plane
- the teachers / greet them at the airport

*Did McKenzie learn how to say hello?* *Yes, he did.*

### 4 VOCABULARY common verbs 3

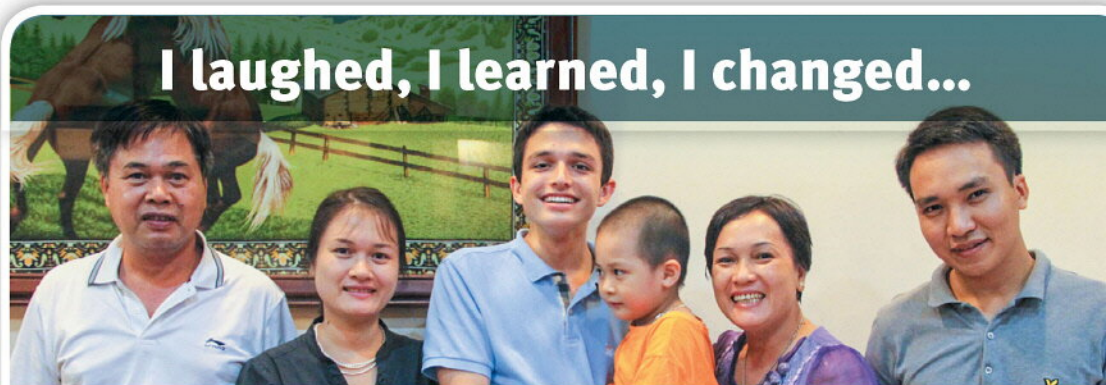
- a Match 1–7 to a–g.

- |          |                                     |                  |
|----------|-------------------------------------|------------------|
| 1 talk   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a spicy food     |
| 2 arrive | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b a language     |
| 3 like   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c to a friend    |
| 4 greet  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d to the office  |
| 5 start  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e a guest        |
| 6 learn  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f at the airport |
| 7 walk   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | g the class      |

- b ➤ p.130 Vocabulary Bank Common verbs 3. Do part 1.

### 5 READING & SPEAKING

- a Look only at the pictures in 1a. Can you remember McKenzie's story?
- b What happened while McKenzie was in Vietnam? Make guesses in pairs. Check (✓) your guesses.
- ☐ He learned a new language.
  - ☐ He learned how to cook Vietnamese food.
  - ☐ He loved the crazy traffic.
  - ☐ He loved his host family.
  - ☐ He missed his family in the US every day.
  - ☐ He visited a lot of beautiful places.
  - ☐ He helped a lot of people in Hanoi.
- c Read McKenzie's blog about his time in Vietnam. Were you guesses in b right?



#### I laughed, I learned, I changed...

After a few days in Hanoi, I moved to my host family's house. They were a young husband and wife and their three-year-old son. At our first dinner, I was nervous because my Vietnamese was terrible and their English wasn't great. But it was fun. We laughed a lot. My host mother cooked a delicious meal.

I studied Vietnamese every morning, and I usually traveled to school by motorcycle taxi. At first, the traffic was terrifying. But after a few days, I loved it.

After a few months, my Vietnamese was good. My Vietnamese friends helped me a lot! I also talked to people on the street. I visited a lot of beautiful places in Vietnam, but my favorite thing was the Vietnamese people. They're nice and friendly, and family is very important to them.

I sometimes missed my family in the US. I also missed pizza! There were a few pizza restaurants in Hanoi, but they weren't the same.

I changed a lot in five months. I learned a new language, and I learned how to enjoy new people and customs. I loved my host family. I'm in the US now and I miss them a lot. I want to go back to Hanoi this summer!

**GLOSSARY** host family: a family students stay with when they study abroad

I changed a lot.: I am a different person now.

go back: return to a place

- d Read the text again and circle the simple past verbs. What is the base form of each verb?
- e Look at the highlighted words. With a partner guess their meaning. Check with your teacher or a dictionary.
- f Do you know anyone who lived in another country or city? Where were they? What did they do? Was it fun?

*My sister lived in Vancouver, Canada for a year. She studied...She worked at...It was fun!*

# 10B What did you do?

## 1 VOCABULARY daily routine verbs

a Complete the verb phrases with *do, get, go, or have*.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ up                      2 \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast                      3 \_\_\_\_\_ to school  
 4 \_\_\_\_\_ shopping                      5 \_\_\_\_\_ dinner                      6 \_\_\_\_\_ homework

b (47) Listen and check. Repeat the verb phrases.

## 2 LISTENING

a (48) Ben is in Paris on business. His 17-year-old daughter, Linda, is at home in Toronto. Listen and check (✓) the places where she was during the day.

- ☐ at school                      ☐ at a museum                      ☐ at a cafe                      ☐ at a shopping mall  
☐ at the gym                      ☐ at the hair salon                      ☐ at a restaurant                      ☐ at the movies

b Listen again and complete the dialogue.



**Linda** Hello?  
**Ben** Hi, honey.  
**Linda** Oh, hi, Dad. How's Paris?  
**Ben** Fine. A lot of work. Did you have a good <sup>1</sup> d \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
**Linda** It was OK.  
**Ben** What did you do?  
**Linda** I got <sup>2</sup> u \_\_\_\_\_ early. I went to school.  
**Ben** How was it?  
**Linda** <sup>3</sup> G \_\_\_\_\_ ! We didn't have classes. We went to an <sup>4</sup> a \_\_\_\_\_ museum.  
**Ben** Oh, nice. Did you have <sup>5</sup> l \_\_\_\_\_ there?  
**Linda** Yes, we had lunch at the cafe. And then I went <sup>6</sup> s \_\_\_\_\_ with Katy.  
**Ben** Did you do your homework?  
**Linda** Yes, Dad. I did my homework after <sup>7</sup> d \_\_\_\_\_ , like always.  
**Ben** Who's that, Linda?



c (49) Listen to the end of the conversation and answer the questions.

- 1 Where is Linda's mother?  
 2 Who is Linda with?

## 3 GRAMMAR simple past: *do, get, go, have*

a Read the dialogue in 2b again and complete the chart.

Present	Past
I get up early.	I _____ up early.
I go to school.	I _____ to school.
We have lunch in the cafe.	We _____ lunch in the cafe.
I do my homework after dinner.	I _____ my homework after dinner.

b (410) Listen and check. Then repeat the present and past sentences.

c ➤ **p.110 Grammar Bank 10B.** Learn more about simple past: *do, get, go, have* and practice it.

## 4 READING

- a Read the introduction to the article. What did over 80,000 people do on July 24, 2010?
- b Now read the rest of the article. Write the letter of the photo next to the **highlighted** words.



# MOVIE SHOWS LIFE AROUND THE WORLD

**ON JULY 24, 2010** over 80,000 people all over the world made videos of their day. Director Kevin Macdonald used the videos to make *Life in a Day*, a 90-minute movie.

In many ways, July 24, 2010 was a normal Saturday. People all over the world got up in the morning and had breakfast. They read the newspaper and **drank tea**. ( ) They watched TV and went to bed. But that wasn't all. The people in the movie **got married**. ( ) They had babies. They **went skydiving**. ( )

There were many interesting moments in the movie. A 15-year-old Canadian boy **shaved his face** ( ) for the first time. A man **finished a bike trip** ( ) from Korea to Kathmandu. (The trip took nine years!) A boy in Peru worked all day **shining shoes**. ( )

People also answered the question, "What do you have in your pocket?" A lot of people had money, phones, and iPods. One man had the keys to an expensive Lamborghini car. A man in Africa had nothing.

The movie gives a great picture of life all over the world today. The best part is, you can watch it online for free!



- c Read the article again. Answer the questions.

- What normal things did people do on July 24, 2010?
- What unusual or interesting things did they do?

- d Find the simple past of the verbs in the article. Write **R** (regular) or **I** (irregular).

- make made
- use \_\_\_\_\_
- read \_\_\_\_\_
- drink \_\_\_\_\_
- watch \_\_\_\_\_

☒ I  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐

- shave \_\_\_\_\_
- finish \_\_\_\_\_
- take \_\_\_\_\_
- work \_\_\_\_\_
- answer \_\_\_\_\_

☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐

## 5 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING sentence stress

- a 4 12))) Listen to the questions. What two words are missing? Are the missing words stressed?

- What time / get up?
- / have breakfast? What / have?
- Where / have lunch? / like it?

- b Listen again and repeat the questions.

- c ► p.83 Communication *Life in a day*. Interview a partner about his / her "life in a day."

- d ► p.85 Writing A blog post. Write about what you did yesterday.

## 6 4 13))) SONG Where Did Our Love Go? 🎵

# 9&10 Review and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a or b.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ two beds in the room.  
a There is    b There are
- 2 There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ windows.  
a some    b any
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ a shower in the bathroom?  
a Is there    b Are there
- 4 There \_\_\_\_\_ books on the table.  
a are any    b are some
- 5 It \_\_\_\_\_ very hot last summer.  
a was    b were
- 6 Where \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday at six o'clock?  
a you were    b were you
- 7 Kareem \_\_\_\_\_ at school yesterday.  
a wasn't    b weren't
- 8 I \_\_\_\_\_ to Vietnam last year.  
a go    b went
- 9 I \_\_\_\_\_ dinner last night.  
I was very busy at work.  
a don't had    b didn't have
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ lunch this afternoon?  
a Did you have    b Had you
- 11 They \_\_\_\_\_ English in college.  
a studied    b studied
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_ your homework last night?  
a Did you    b Did you do
- 13 What time \_\_\_\_\_?  
a did they arrive    b did they arrived
- 14 I \_\_\_\_\_ a great video of my vacation last year.  
a maked    b made
- 15 We \_\_\_\_\_ up early yesterday.  
a get    b got

## VOCABULARY

a Write the missing words.

- 1 I can't turn on the TV. Where is the **r**\_\_\_\_\_ **c**\_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 **A** Excuse me. Where can I change money?  
**B** There's a **b**\_\_\_\_\_ on Main Street.
- 3 You're in room 1122. Take the **el**\_\_\_\_\_ to the 11th floor.
- 4 There aren't any **t**\_\_\_\_\_, and I want to take a shower.
- 5 A doctor works in a **h**\_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Leave the car in the **p**\_\_\_\_\_ **l**\_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 I'm at the **a**\_\_\_\_\_. My plane leaves at 9:00.

b Complete with *in*, *at*, or *on*. He lives *in* Los Angeles.

- 1 She works \_\_\_\_\_ home.
- 2 I was \_\_\_\_\_ the gym this morning.
- 3 Are you \_\_\_\_\_ bed? Get up! It's ten o'clock!
- 4 I had a sandwich \_\_\_\_\_ the plane.
- 5 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ a meeting now. Can I call you tomorrow?

c Complete with a verb from the list.

arrive   miss   start   travel   try   wait

- 1 I'm in the UK for a year. I \_\_\_\_\_ my friends and family in the US.
- 2 What time do we \_\_\_\_\_ and finish class?
- 3 They \_\_\_\_\_ at the airport at 3:30.
- 4 I always \_\_\_\_\_ for the bus at the stop on the corner.
- 5 **A** When did you \_\_\_\_\_ sushi?    **B** Last year. I was in Japan.
- 6 Did you \_\_\_\_\_ by taxi or train?

d Complete the phrases.

- 1 The restaurant is **b** \_\_\_\_\_ the bank and the school.
- 2 **A** Where were you this weekend?    **B** At the **b**\_\_\_\_\_. I love the ocean.
- 3 **A** Is there a pharmacy near here?  
**B** Yes. It's on First Street, **ac** \_\_\_\_\_ from the station.
- 4 **A** Excuse me, where's the M hotel?  
**B** Go straight ahead, and **t** \_\_\_\_\_ right.

## PRONUNCIATION

a Can you remember these words and sounds?



b ► **p.132-134 Sound Bank.** Check the words and sounds, and practice saying the example words.

c Underline the stressed syllable.

- 1 tra|vel    2 res|tau|rant    3 air|port    4 a|rrive    5 a|cross

## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?



### Our week in a treehouse

In February last year, we stayed for a week at a treehouse resort in **southern** China. It was great!

Our room was in a tree. We **climbed** stairs to get to it! The room was very nice. We had a large bed, pillows, chairs, and a beautiful view of the beach. The room had electricity, but it didn't have a shower. It was hot at night, but we slept well.

What can you do at the resort? There aren't any TVs or computers, but there is a lot to do outside. You can walk in the park, swim at the beach, and learn about Chinese **culture** and customs. My husband and I loved it!

We had a great time at the resort, but one week was **enough**!

— AMY OLSON

**a** Read about a tourist's experience at a resort. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

- 1 The room had a shower.
- 2 It wasn't cold at night.
- 3 Amy used the Internet at the resort.
- 4 You can swim at the resort.
- 5 Amy's husband liked the resort.
- 6 Amy wanted to stay another week.

**b** Look at the **highlighted** words and phrases and guess their meaning. Check with your teacher or a dictionary.

## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

**4 14)))** Listen and choose the right answer.

- 1 Where was the man?
  - a At his friend's house.
  - b At the movie theater.
- 2 What did the woman like about the hotel?
  - a The rooms.
  - b The breakfast.
- 3 Where did the man work yesterday?
  - a In his office.
  - b At home.
- 4 What did the woman see last night?
  - a A Chinese movie.
  - b A French movie.
- 5 Where did the woman stay in Rio?
  - a At a hotel.
  - b At a friend's house.
- 6 What did the man do on Saturday?
  - a He did housework.
  - b He had lunch.
- 7 Where's the post office?
  - a Across from the gas station.
  - b Across from the bus station.
- 8 What are the directions to the bank?
  - a Go straight ahead and turn left.
  - b Go straight ahead and turn right.

## CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Check (✓) the boxes.

Can you...?

- |                                         |                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 identify things in a hotel room       | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 2 ask about facilities in a hotel       | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 3 talk about places in your town        | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 4 say where you were and what you did   | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 5 ask what other people did             | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 6 give and understand simple directions | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |



**Short movies** An interesting hotel

Watch and enjoy the movie.

# 11A What do you think of it?

## 1 GRAMMAR

object pronouns: *me, him, etc.*

- a (4 15))) Cover the text. Listen to Rachel and Brian talk about music. What singers / bands do they talk about?

- 1 **Rachel** Listen to this. What do you think of it?  
**Brian** I hate **it**. It's awful. Who is it?  
**Rachel** Enrique Iglesias. I love **him**. He's great.  
**Brian** You love him because he's cute.

- 2 **Rachel** What about this song?  
**Brian** It's pretty good. Who is it?  
**Rachel** Lady Gaga.  
**Brian** Oh, I can't stand **her**. She always wears those terrible clothes.

- 3 **Rachel** OK, who do you like? Tell **me**.  
**Brian** I really like Radiohead. They're fantastic. Do you like **them**?  
**Rachel** Um, they're not bad.  
**Brian** My brother and I have tickets to their concert next week. Come with **us**!  
**Rachel** No, thanks. They're OK, but I don't really want to go.

- b Complete the chart with a **highlighted** word.

Subject pronoun	Object pronoun
I	<u>me</u>
you	<u>you</u>
he	_____
she	_____
it	_____
we	_____
they	_____

- c ➤ **p.112 Grammar Bank 11A.** Learn more about object pronouns and practice them.

- d (4 17))) Listen and say the object pronoun.

))) we { us

## 2 PRONUNCIATION strong stress

- a (4 18))) Listen to the dialogue. Which three words have "extra" stress?

A Listen to this. What do you think of it?

B I don't like it. It's awful. Who is it?

A Beyoncé. I really like her. She's great.

- b Listen again and repeat the dialogue. Pay attention to the strong stress.



### Strong stress

Give extra stress to very important words.

It's **awful**. She's **great**.








- c Practice the dialogues in 1a with a partner. Give strong stress to the most important words.



### 3 VOCABULARY opinion words

- a Complete the chart with these words. Look at the dialogues in 1a to help you.

awful fantastic not bad can't stand love pretty

Likes and dislikes: What do you think of ...?			
		I _____ it. I really like it.	It's great. It's _____.
		I like it.	It's _____ good.
		It's OK.	It's _____.
		I don't like it.	
		I hate it. I _____ it.	It's _____. It's terrible.

- b **4 19** Listen and check your answers. Then listen and repeat the expressions.
- c **4 20** Listen to eight music extracts. What do you think of them? Use the expressions in the chart.

### 4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

- a Look at the musicians. What do you know about them?



- b **4 21** Listen to Rachel and Brian talk about some of the musicians. Write **R** next to the musicians Rachel likes.
- c Listen again and write **B** next to the musicians Brian likes.

- d In pairs, ask and answer about the musicians in the photos.

What do you think of Shakira? *I really like her. She's great.*

What do you think of The Black Eyed Peas? *I don't know them.*

- e Write names in the spaces. Try to think of songs / people who are very famous.

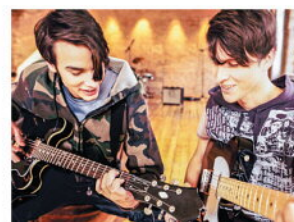
Female singers	Male singers
Groups	Songs

- f Ask your partner's opinion of the songs and people.
- g Tell your partner about a singer or group you love or hate. Include the information below and your own ideas.

- Where is the singer / group from?
- What kind of music does the singer / group make?
- Are they very famous now? When were they famous?
- Which of their songs do you like / hate?

*I love Coldplay. They're a group from the UK. They play rock music. They have a lot of great songs. I love "Yellow," "Clocks," and...*

#### Kinds of music



rock



pop



hip hop



classical

# 11B Strangers on a train

## 1 VOCABULARY common verbs 3

- a Complete the questions with a verb from the list.

arrive buy learn meet say stay think

- How do you \_\_\_\_\_ *Nice to meet you in your language?*
- Do you \_\_\_\_\_ things on the Internet? What?
- Where do you usually \_\_\_\_\_ your friends on the weekend?
- What do you \_\_\_\_\_ of classical music?
- Do you want to \_\_\_\_\_ another language? Which language?
- Do you sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ late to work / school?
- Did you \_\_\_\_\_ in a hotel on your last vacation? Was it good?

- b Answer the questions with a partner.

- c ➤ **p.130 Vocabulary Bank**  
*Common verbs 3.* Do part 2.

- d Complete with the opposite verbs.

- Did he **lose** his watch?  
Did he \_\_\_\_\_ his watch?
- I **send** a lot of text messages.  
I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of text messages.
- I **get** a lot of birthday gifts.  
I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of birthday gifts.
- The train **arrives** at 2:30.  
The train \_\_\_\_\_ at 2:30.
- Please **turn on** the computer.  
Please \_\_\_\_\_ the computer.

## 2 READING & LISTENING

- a (4 23) Read and listen to the story. In pairs, ask and answer the questions after each part.
- b (4 24) Why didn't Olivia come to the theater? What do you think? Now listen to the end of the story. What happened?

### STRANGERS ON A TRAIN

#### PART 1

When the train stopped, I opened my eyes and looked out of the window. I **saw** her on the platform. A tall, blond woman with dark blue eyes. The train **left** the station. As usual, the 6:20 was full.

"Excuse me. Can I sit here?" I opened my eyes again. It was the tall, blond woman.

"Sure," I **said**. She **sat** down next to me. There was a nice smell. Chanel Number 5, I **thought**.

I started to listen to music on my phone.

"I love Yo Yo Ma."

"Excuse me?" I said.

"You're listening to Yo Yo Ma.

I love classical music."

We talked about music until the train arrived at South Station.

"Coffee?" she said.

I looked at my watch. "OK," I said.

- Where did the man first see the woman?
- What was the woman's perfume?
- What did they talk about?
- What did they do when the train arrived?

#### PART 2

I **bought** two coffees at a station cafe. We sat and talked. Her name was Olivia. She **told** me that she worked in Boston.

"What do you do?" I asked.

"I work in real estate—apartments and houses. What do you do?"

"I work for Citibank."

"That's interesting!" said Olivia. "Do you live in Boston?"

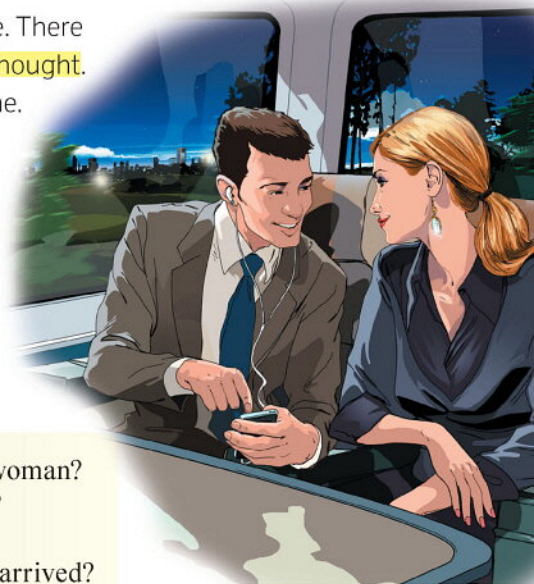
"Yes. I have an apartment near the river." I told her the street.

"Wow! That's an expensive part of Boston!"

I looked at my watch. "It's late. Time to go."

"I can drive you home," she said. "I live near you." She smiled. Her eyes were very blue.

- What does Olivia do?
- What does the man do?
- Where does he live?
- Where does Olivia live?



### 3 GRAMMAR simple past: more irregular verbs

a Find the **simple past** of these irregular verbs in the story.

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1 see _____   | 7 tell _____  |
| 2 leave _____ | 8 drive _____ |
| 3 say _____   | 9 give _____  |
| 4 sit _____   | 10 find _____ |
| 5 think _____ | 11 send _____ |
| 6 buy _____   |               |

b **4 25**) Listen and check. Repeat the verbs.

c **p.112 Grammar Bank 11B.** Learn more about simple past: more irregular verbs and practice it.

#### STRANGERS ON A TRAIN

##### PART 3

Her car was in the parking lot. It was an Audi TT.

"Nice car," I said.

She **drove** fast. Very fast. She stopped outside my apartment. We said good-bye, and I **gave** her my phone number. The next morning there was a text message from Olivia.

*I really want to c u again! Friday?*

On Friday morning, she called me.

"I have two tickets for the Yo Yo Ma concert tonight! Can you get them from the box office at 7:15? We can meet at the theater cafe at 7:30. The concert starts at 8:00."



- 9 What kind of car does Olivia have?
- 10 What did she write in the text message?
- 11 What did she have tickets for?
- 12 Where did she want to meet him? What time?

##### PART 4

I arrived at the theater at 7:00. I got the tickets, and I waited in the cafe. I read a newspaper. Olivia didn't come. I looked at my watch. It was 7:45. I looked at my phone. There was a text message.

*Sorry! In a meeting. See you in the theater. Leave my ticket at the box office.*

I left her ticket at the box office and **found** my seat. The concert started, but Olivia didn't arrive.

At 9:00, I called her, but her phone was off. I **sent** her a text:

*Where r u?*

I was angry. I left the theater and went home. I opened the door of my apartment and turned on the light...

- 13 What time did he arrive at the theater?
- 14 What happened at 7:45? What did the man do?
- 15 What did the man do at 9:00?
- 16 What did he do after that?

d **p.131 Vocabulary Bank Irregular verbs.**

e **4 28**) Listen and say the sentence in the simple past.

He drives to work. He drove to work.

### 4 PRONUNCIATION

silent consonants

a **4 29**) Listen and repeat the words. Practice saying them.

bought knew listened school  
talked walked Wednesday wrote

b **4 30**) Listen. Practice the sentences.

He **talked** and we **listened**.

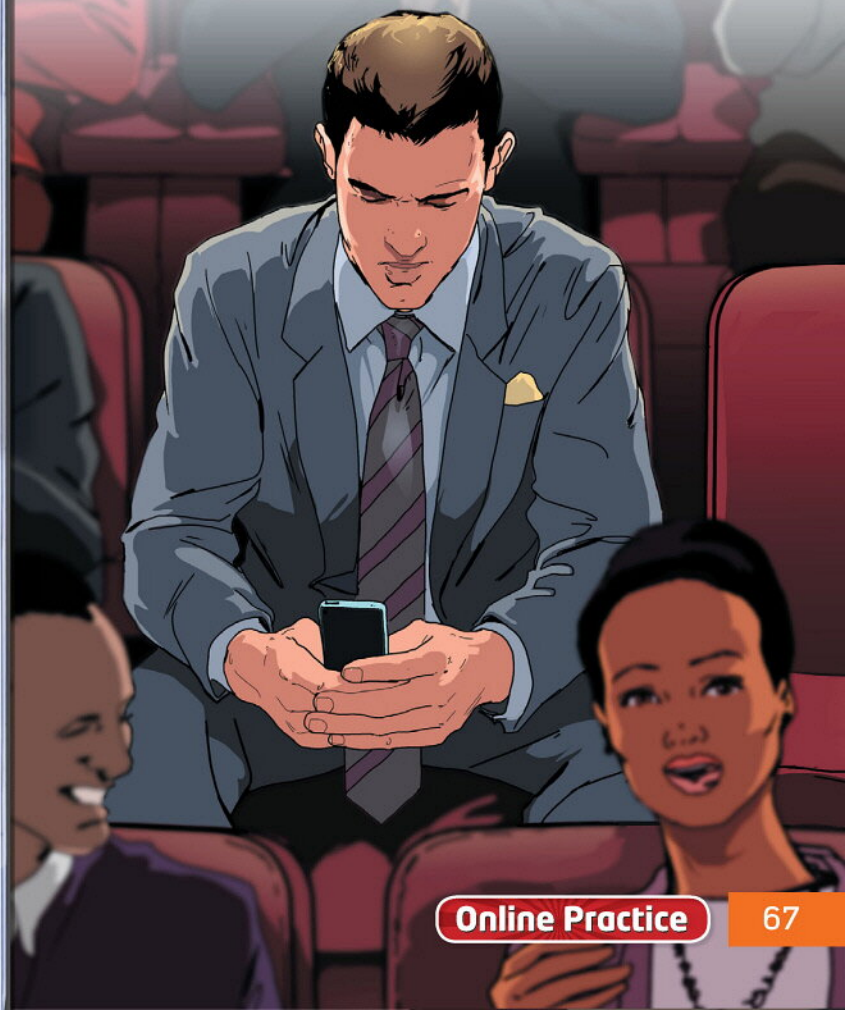
They weren't at school on **Wednesday**.

She **walked** to town and **bought** a sandwich.

I **knew** Tom **wrote** the text.

c Ask and answer the questions in pairs. Use the words with silent consonants from a.

- 1 What did you think of the story in 2a?  
(*I thought it was...*)
- 2 When did you know the woman in the story was a thief? (*I knew she was a thief in part...*)
- 3 What did the man and the woman buy?  
Make a list. (*He bought... She bought...*)
- 4 Look at the text messages in the story. What did they write? (*He wrote... She wrote...*)



# Practical English Would you like a coffee?

## 1 LISTENING

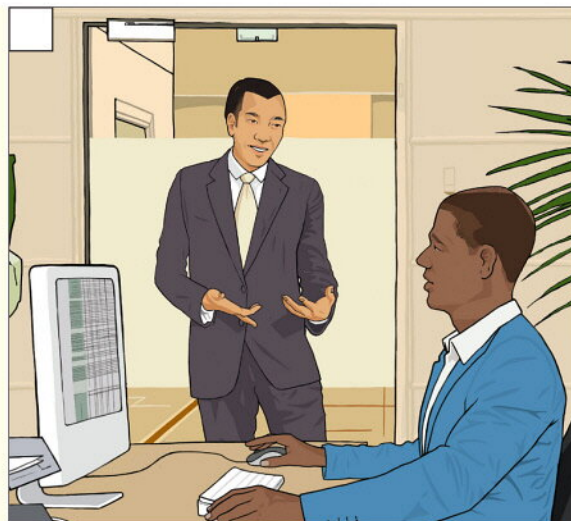
a 4 31))) Listen. Number the pictures.

b Listen again and complete the dialogues.

- 1 John Hey, Chris. Would you like to watch the <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ with me on Sunday?  
Chris Sorry, I can't. Sunday is my <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_'s party. Would you like to come?  
John Yes, I'd love to. Thanks!  
Chris Great. It starts at <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. I can email you the directions.  
John OK. Can I bring something?  
Chris Yes. Bring something to <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
John No problem.



- 2 Chris Hi, John! I'm <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you came.  
John Me, too. Here, I brought some <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
Chris Great, thanks. Would you like a <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?  
John Uh... No, thanks.  
Chris OK. Would you like a hot dog?  
John No, thanks.  
Chris Oh. Is there a problem?  
John Well, I don't eat <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
Chris Oh, no <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. There's salad too. Would you like some salad?  
John Yes, please!



c Practice the dialogues with a partner.



### Would you like...?

*Would you like + noun*

**Would you like** a burger?

Yes, please.

No, thanks.

*Would you like to + verb*

**Would you like to** watch the game?

Yes, I'd love to.

Sorry, I can't.

## 2 PRONUNCIATION linking: *would you*

a 4 32))) Listen and repeat the questions.

Would you like to have lunch with me?

Would you like a coffee?

Would you like to see a movie tonight?

Would you like something to drink?



### Linking: *would you*

In questions with *Would you like...?*, we usually link the words *would* and *you*. It sounds like /wʊdʒə/.

b 4 33))) Listen and say  
*Would you like a / some...? or*  
*Would you like to?*

))) a burger (Would you like a burger?)

))) see a movie (Would you like to see a movie?)

### 3 KINDS OF PARTIES

- a Complete the magazine article about parties with these words.

potato flowers card chocolate

#### What can I bring to the party?

When people invite us to parties, we always ask, "Can I bring something?" Here are some popular things you can bring to a party.

##### Kind of party

##### Popular things you can bring



a birthday party



- a birthday \_\_\_\_\_
- a book



a dinner party



- \_\_\_\_\_
- something to drink



a barbecue



- \_\_\_\_\_ chips
- soda



a housewarming party



- \_\_\_\_\_
- a gift

- b 4 34))) Listen to three people invite their friends to parties. What kind of party is it? What can they bring? Complete the chart.

	What kind of party?	What can they bring?
1		
2		
3		

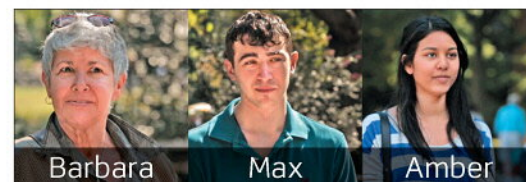
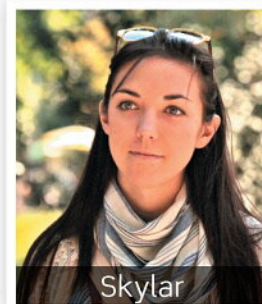
### 4 SPEAKING

- a Practice the dialogue with a partner.
- A Would you like to come to a party at my house?  
 B Yes, I'd love to. Thanks! When is it?  
 A It's on Friday at 8:00.  
 B Great. Can I bring something?  
 A Yes. It's a barbecue, so can you bring potato chips?  
 B OK. See you then!
- b Look at the dialogue. Circle the information in the dialogue that answers the questions below.
- 1 What kind of party is it?
  - 2 When is it?
  - 3 Where is it?
  - 4 What can person B bring?
- c In pairs, role-play the conversation in a. Use your own ideas. Take turns playing A and B. Don't forget to include the kind of party, when it is, where it is, and what person B can bring.
- d ► p.85 Writing An invitation. Write an email to invite someone to a party.

### 5 VIDEO PEOPLE ON THE STREET

When did you last go to a party?  
 What did you do there?  
 Did you bring anything?

- a 4 35))) Watch or listen to Skylar. When did she last go to a party?
- b 4 36))) Watch or listen. What did she do at the party?
- c 4 37))) Watch or listen. What did she bring?
- d 4 38))) Now watch or listen and answer the questions for the other three people.



	Barbara	Max	Amber
When did you last go to a party?			
What did you do there?			
Did you bring anything?			

- e In pairs, ask and answer the questions in the box.

# 12A Trip of a lifetime

## 1 GRAMMAR future: *be going to*

- a **4 39** Dan Grec is a traveler from Australia. He blogs about his travels at TheRoadChoseMe.com. Read and listen to the blog post. Complete it with the verbs from the list.

be come back camp drive have  
 learn make take travel write



Next week, I'm going to <sup>1</sup> drive my car 50,000 kilometers on the Pan American Highway. The road goes from the Arctic Ocean in Alaska to Ushuaia in the south of Argentina. I'm very excited!

I'm going to <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ alone, but I'm going to <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ friends on the road. I can't speak any Spanish, but I'm going to <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. I'm going to <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, and maybe sometimes stay in small hotels.

I think I'm ready for my trip. I'm not going to <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ any problems. I have my car, a tent, a camera, a laptop, and a lot of maps. I also went to the doctor and got some shots, so I'm going to <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ healthy.

When am I going to <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_? I don't know! The trip is going to <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ about a year. I'm going to <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ about it on this blog. So check here for all the news!

- b Do you think Dan is ready for his trip?
- c Read the blog again. Are the **highlighted** words about the present, the past, or the future?

- d Complete the sentences in the chart.

+	I'm _____ drive my car 50,000 kilometers.
-	I'm _____ have any problems.
?	When _____ to come back?

- e **p.114 Grammar Bank 12A.** Learn more about future: *be going to* and practice it.

## 2 PRONUNCIATION

### sentence stress

- a **4 41** Listen to the sentences. Underline the stressed words.

- I'm going to drive from Alaska to Argentina.
- I'm going to go alone.
- I'm not going to have any problems.

- b **4 42** Listen to the questions. Underline the stressed words.

- When are you going to go?
- Where are you going to drive?
- Are you going to go alone?
- When are you going to come back?
- Are you going to write about your trip?

- c In pairs, role-play an interview with Dan. Ask and answer the questions in b. Use the information from the blog post in 1a.

When are you going to go? (I'm going to go next week.)

- d **4 43** Listen and make **+** sentences with *going to* about tomorrow.

go to work (I'm going to go to work tomorrow.)

- e What are you going to do tomorrow? Write five things you are going to do, four true and one false. Read them to a partner. Can he/she guess which thing is false?

Tomorrow I'm going to have lunch in an expensive restaurant. I'm going to go to a party at my friend's house...

### 3 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING future time expressions

a Write the time expressions in the right place on the time line.

tomorrow   next year   next week   tomorrow night   tonight   next month



b Look at the questionnaire below. What words are missing?

QUESTIONNAIRE: Your Future Plans			
Today	Tomorrow	On the weekend	In the summer / next year
Where / go after class?	/ get up early tomorrow?	/ go somewhere? Where?	/ go on vacation?
/ go out this evening?	What / do tomorrow morning?	/ go shopping?	Where / go?
What time / go to bed tonight?		/ go out on Saturday evening?	Who / go with?
		What / do?	

c For each question, think of answers that are true for you.

d Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in the questionnaire.

### 4 LISTENING

a Cover the blog in exercise 1. In pairs, remember Dan's plans for his trip.

*Alaska–Argentina; alone camp; a year; write a blog  
He's going to drive from Alaska to Argentina.*

b 4 44))) Listen to an interview with Dan after he came back. Number the pictures in the order he mentions them.



c Listen again and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false). Then correct the false information.

- His trip took about a year. \_\_\_\_
- He took a boat from Panama to Colombia. \_\_\_\_
- He learned some Spanish. \_\_\_\_
- He lost his maps. \_\_\_\_
- He saw penguins in Argentina. \_\_\_\_
- He thought llama was delicious. \_\_\_\_
- For his next trip, he's going to travel across Australia. \_\_\_\_

### 5 SPEAKING

a Plan your dream trip. Think of answers to the questions below.

Where / go? \_\_\_\_\_  
 When / go? \_\_\_\_\_  
 How / travel? \_\_\_\_\_ (by bus, by plane, etc.)  
 Who / with? \_\_\_\_\_  
 Where / stay? \_\_\_\_\_

b Ask a partner about his / her trip. Which trip do you prefer?

Where are you going to go? I'm going to go to Thailand.

### 6 4 45))) SONG I Can See Clearly Now 🎵

What are you doing right now? Where were you yesterday?

I'm playing a game. I was at work.

# 12B From start to finish

## 1 GRAMMAR & SPEAKING review of present, past, and future

a ► p.114 Grammar Bank 12B. Review the present, past, and future forms and practice them.







b Work in groups. Play the game. Move around the board and answer the questions. The first person to get to *Finish* is the winner!



## 2 PRONUNCIATION review of sounds

a Can you remember? Put three verbs in each column.

camp do get go have help know lose make meet play rain relax see send snow speak use

 train	 egg	 boot	 phone	 cat	 tree
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

b 447 Listen and check.

## 3 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING review of verb collocations

a Can you remember? Which verbs do you use?

do get go have leave make play take

1 _____ an umbrella photos a shower	2 _____ home shopping to the gym	3 _____ homework housework	4 _____ the piano soccer computer games
5 _____ up in the morning a birthday gift a letter 	6 _____ dinner a sandwich children 	7 _____ dinner friends a phone call 	8 _____ the house your wallet on the bus 

b Complete the questions with a verb from a.

- Do you \_\_\_\_\_ sports? What sports do you \_\_\_\_\_?
- What do you usually \_\_\_\_\_ for lunch? What did you \_\_\_\_\_ for lunch yesterday?
- When do you usually \_\_\_\_\_ homework? Are you going to \_\_\_\_\_ homework tonight?
- Do you sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ dinner for your friends or family? What do you usually \_\_\_\_\_?
- Did you \_\_\_\_\_ shopping last weekend? Where did you \_\_\_\_\_? What did you buy?
- Do you \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of text messages? How many do you \_\_\_\_\_ a day? Who are they from?
- What time do you usually \_\_\_\_\_ the house in the morning? Where do you go after you \_\_\_\_\_?
- When do you \_\_\_\_\_ photos? Do you usually \_\_\_\_\_ photos with a camera or with your cell phone?

c Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

# 11&12 Review and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a or b.

- I wrote to Ana, but \_\_\_\_\_ didn't answer.  
a she b her
- He was in my class, but  
I don't remember \_\_\_\_\_.  
a he b him
- A What do you think of Coldplay?  
B I don't like \_\_\_\_\_.  
a they b them
- I really like Maria, but  
I don't think she likes \_\_\_\_\_.  
a my b me
- A How was the movie?  
B I hated it, but Tom \_\_\_\_\_ it was great.  
a thinked b thought
- I \_\_\_\_\_ to work today.  
The traffic was terrible!  
a drove b drove
- A What time is it?  
B Seven o'clock.  
A Excuse me, \_\_\_\_\_ "seven" or "eleven"?  
a did you said b did you say
- Did you hear about Lily? She \_\_\_\_\_ next to  
a movie star on the plane last week!  
a sitted b sat
- We \_\_\_\_\_ the movie last night.  
a didn't see b didn't saw
- I \_\_\_\_\_ the computer yesterday,  
but it \_\_\_\_\_.  
a turn on ... didn't started  
b turned on ... didn't start
- A I like your suit!  
B Thanks. I \_\_\_\_\_ it last week.  
a bought b bought
- \_\_\_\_\_ get married next month.  
a She goes to b She's going to
- Where \_\_\_\_\_ to go next summer?  
a you are going b are you going
- I'm \_\_\_\_\_ to go to a university.  
a going not b not going
- \_\_\_\_\_ you going to be in class tomorrow?  
a Are b Do

## VOCABULARY

a Write the missing words.



1 a **birthday** party



2 a birthday **c** \_\_\_\_\_



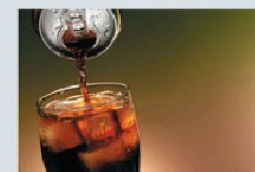
3 a **b** \_\_\_\_\_



4 potato **ch** \_\_\_\_\_



5 a **d** \_\_\_\_\_ party



6 something to **dr** \_\_\_\_\_

b Complete with a verb from the list.

do get go meet take

- |                               |                                     |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| _____ <b>go</b> _____ to work | 6 _____ photos                      |
| 1 _____ an email              | 7 _____ up in the morning           |
| 2 _____ to the gym            | 8 _____ housework                   |
| 3 _____ at the theater        | 9 _____ somebody for the first time |
| 4 _____ homework              | 10 _____ shopping                   |
| 5 _____ an umbrella           |                                     |

c Complete the phrases.

- A What do you think of hip hop music?  
B It's terrible. I can't **st** \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- A I love Yo Yo Ma. What do you think of him?  
B I like him. He's **pr** \_\_\_\_\_ good.
- A What do you think of the Black Eyed Peas?  
B I **h** \_\_\_\_\_ them. They're awful.
- W** \_\_\_\_\_ you like a piece of cake? I made it this morning.
- A Would you like to come to my party? B Sorry, I **c** \_\_\_\_\_.

## PRONUNCIATION

a Can you remember these words and sounds?



b ► p. 132-134 Sound Bank. Check the words and sounds, and practice saying the example words.

c Underline the stressed syllable.

- 1 to|mor|row 2 af|ter|noon 3 bar|be|cue 4 some|thing 5 ex|cit|ed

## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

- a Read the article and put an X for the continent(s) Steven didn't visit.

- ☐ Africa  
☐ North America (Canada, the US, Mexico)  
☐ South America (Brazil, Peru, Bolivia, etc.)  
☐ Asia (India, Thailand, etc.)  
☐ Europe  
☐ Oceania (Australia, New Zealand, etc.)  
☐ Antarctica

### STEVEN NEWMAN: The first person to walk around the world

Steven Newman is an English teacher in the US. He is also the first person to walk around the world.

On April 1st, he started walking from his house in Bethel, Ohio. He walked every day. He stayed in a tent or with **local** families. First, he walked to New York and Boston. Then he went to Ireland by plane and walked through Europe.

Steven had a good time, but he sometimes also had **trouble**. He walked in the snow in the mountains in Spain. It was very cold and dangerous! **Wild animals chased** him in Africa. He slept in a tree that night. He also made a lot of friends. He stayed with families in Africa, India, Thailand, and Malaysia.

**Finally**, after four years of walking, Steven returned to his home in Ohio. His mother was very happy to see him. He was famous, and he wrote a book about his **journey**.

What is his next adventure going to be? He's going to walk the Great Wall of China. He's studying Chinese now. He's also going to Bolivia, in South America. He's going to walk from the Andes mountains to the Amazon River.

- b Read the article again. Answer the questions.

- When did Steven start his walk?
- Where did he stay?
- Where did he have a problem with the weather?
- Where did he have a problem with the animals?
- How long did his walk take?
- Where is he going to go next?

- c Look at the **highlighted** words and phrases and guess their meaning. Check with your teacher or a dictionary.

## CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

- 4 48))) Listen and choose the right answer.

- Where are they going to go in the summer?  
a To the mountains.  
b To the beach.
- The woman thinks the movie was \_\_\_\_\_.  
a good  
b bad
- Who likes classical music?  
a The woman.  
b The man.
- Is the woman going to buy the shoes?  
a Yes, she is.  
b No, she isn't.
- When are they going to have dinner?  
a Tonight.  
b Tomorrow.
- What does Jim have to drink?  
a juice  
b water

## CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Check (✓) the boxes.

Can you...?

- |                                             |                                      |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 give your opinion about people and things | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 2 talk about what you did in the past       | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 3 make and respond to invitations           | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |
| 4 tell and ask people about future plans    | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes, I can. |



**Short movies** Trip of a lifetime  
Watch and enjoy the movie.

# Communication

## 1B GUESS THE COUNTRIES Student A

- Complete the information. Ask **B** about photo 1. Say *Is she from ... ?* Write the country under the photo.
- Answer **B**'s question about photo 2. Say *Yes, he is* or *No, he isn't*.
- Continue with the other photos.



**Thalía**  
She's from \_\_\_\_\_.



**Garth Brooks**  
He's from the US.



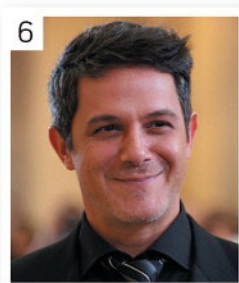
**Mohammed Abdu**  
He's from \_\_\_\_\_.



**Luciana Abreu**  
She's from Portugal.



**Robbie Williams**  
He's from \_\_\_\_\_.



**Alejandro Sanz**  
He's from Spain.



**Hikaru Utada**  
She's from \_\_\_\_\_.

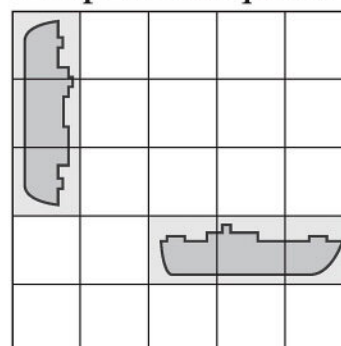


**Faye Wong**  
She's from China.

## PE1 GAME: HIT THE SHIPS Student A

- Draw five "ships" in **Your ships**.

1 ship = three squares



**Your ships**

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
A										
B										
C										
D										
E										
F										
G										
H										
I										
J										

**B's ships**

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
A										
B										
C										
D										
E										
F										
G										
H										
I										
J										

- Try to "hit" **B**'s ships. Say a square, e.g., *H16*. If **B** says *hit*, check (✓) the square in **B's ships**. If **B** says *nothing*, put an (X) in the square.
- B** says a square. Say *hit* or *nothing*.

## 2B PERSONAL INFORMATION

Student A

- a Interview **B** and complete **B**'s form.

First name	Last name
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Address	Age
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	
Zip code	Married <input type="checkbox"/> Single <input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text"/>	
Phone number:	
home <input type="text"/>	Email: <input type="text"/>
cell <input type="text"/>	

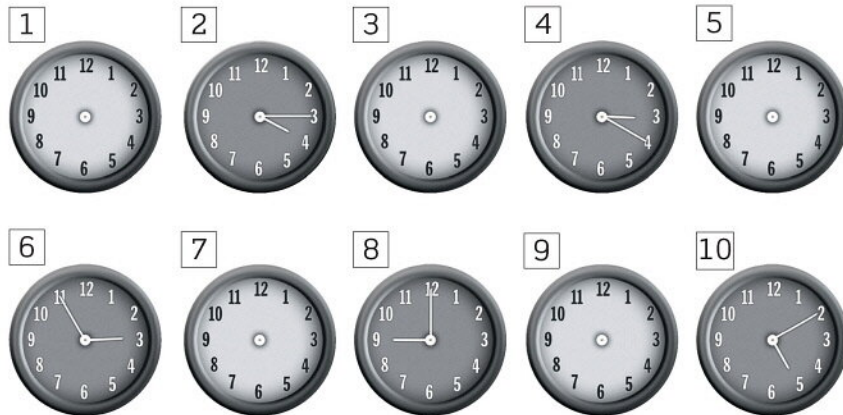
○ Email addresses

@ = at  
 . = dot

- b Answer **B**'s questions. Use the information in the YOU form.

YOU	
First name	Last name
Pat	Wilson
Address	Age
12 Elm Street	19
Austin, Texas	
Zip code	Married <input type="checkbox"/> Single <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
78703	
Phone number:	
home 770-3984	Email: wilsonp@btalk.com
cell 512-555-9436	

## PE5 WHAT TIME IS IT? Student A



Ask **B** questions to complete the times on the clocks. Then write the times below the clocks (1:25, 2:30, etc.).

⌋ Clock 1. What time is it?

## 3A MEMORY GAME Students A + B

- a Look at the photo for 30 seconds.  
 b Close your book. In pairs, can you remember all the things in the photo?



# Communication

## 1B GUESS THE COUNTRIES Student B

- Answer A's question about photo 1. Say *Yes, she is* or *No, she isn't*.
- Complete the information. Ask A about photo 2. Say *Is he from ...?* Write the country under the photo.
- Continue with the other photos.



**Thalía**  
She's from Mexico.



**Garth Brooks**  
He's from \_\_\_\_\_.



**Mohammed Abdu**  
He's from Saudi Arabia.



**Luciana Abreu**  
She's from \_\_\_\_\_.



**Robbie Williams**  
He's from England.



**Alejandro Sanz**  
He's from \_\_\_\_\_.



**Hikaru Utada**  
She's from Japan.

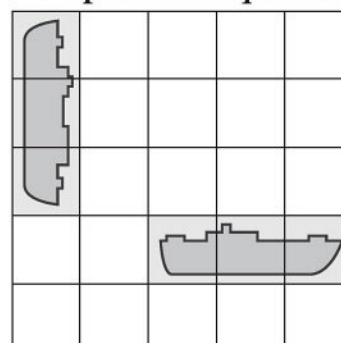


**Faye Wong**  
She's from \_\_\_\_\_.

## PE1 GAME: HIT THE SHIPS Student B

- Draw five "ships" in **Your ships**.

1 ship = three squares



**Your ships**

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
A										
B										
C										
D										
E										
F										
G										
H										
I										
J										

**A's ships**

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
A										
B										
C										
D										
E										
F										
G										
H										
I										
J										

- A says a square, e.g., *H16*. If you have a ship in H16, say *hit*. If not, say *nothing*.
- Try to "hit" A's ships. Say a square, e.g., *B12*. If A says *hit*, check (✓) the square in **A's ships**. If A says *nothing*, put an (X) in the square.

## 2B PERSONAL INFORMATION

Student B

- a Answer A's questions. Use the information in the **YOU** form.

YOU	
First name	Last name
Sam	Hudson
Address	Age
91 Oak Street	35
Portland, Oregon	
Zip code	Married <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Single <input type="checkbox"/>
97204	
Phone number:	
home 823-9468	Email: samh@topmail.net
cell 503-555-7164	

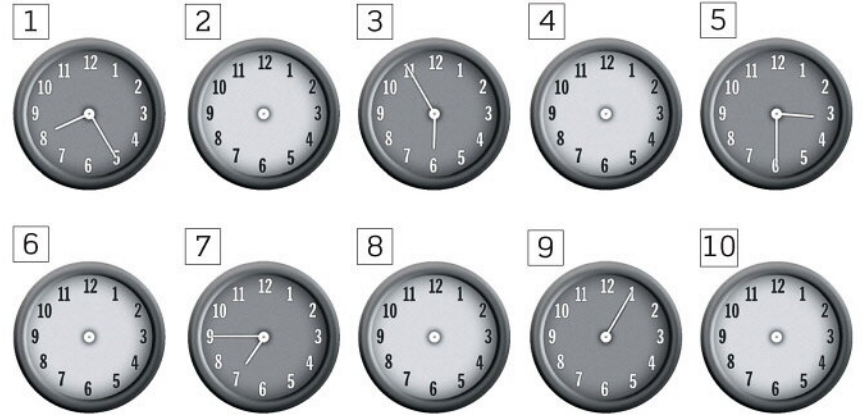
🔍 Email addresses

@ = at  
 . = dot

- b Interview A and complete A's form.

First name	Last name
Address	Age
Zip code	Married <input type="checkbox"/> Single <input type="checkbox"/>
Phone number:	
home	Email:
cell	

## PE5 WHAT TIME IS IT? Student B



Ask A questions to complete the times on the clocks. Then write the times below the clocks (1:25, 2:30, etc.).

⤵ Clock 2. What time is it?

## 5A A NEW HAIRCUT Students A + B

Do you like her new haircut?



### 1B Answers for Exercise 4d, p.7

1. Rain, Korea; 2. Marisa Monte, Brazil.

### 2A Answers for Exercise 5, p.11

1 Adele: English; 2 Gisele Bündchen: Brazilian;  
 3 tacos: Mexican; 4 bánh mì sandwiches: Vietnamese;  
 5 Cristiano Ronaldo: Portuguese; 6 Lenovo: Chinese;  
 7 Robert Pattinson: English; 8 Samsung: Korean;  
 9 Land Rovers: British; 10 Lucy Liu: American

# Communication

## 7A WEEKDAYS AND WEEKENDS Students A + B

- a** Look at the questions. Write answers that are true for you.
- b** Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Write your partner's answers.

Do you go to the gym during the week?  Yes, I do. I go on Wednesday night.

### DURING THE WEEK

	YOU	YOUR PARTNER
1 / go to the gym during the week?	_____	_____
2 What time / go to work or school?	_____	_____
3 / go by bus?	_____	_____
4 / play computer games at school or work?	_____	_____
5 / go out with your friends during the week?	_____	_____
6 What / do?	_____	_____
7 / make dinner during the week?	_____	_____
8 What / make?	_____	_____
9 What time / be / dinner in your house?	_____	_____
10 / be tired during the week?	_____	_____

### ON THE WEEKEND

1 / be busy on the weekend?	_____	_____
2 / go out on Friday or Saturday night?	_____	_____
3 Where / do?	_____	_____
4 / go shopping on the weekend?	_____	_____
5 What / be / your favorite stores?	_____	_____
6 / walk or play sports?	_____	_____
7 / read a newspaper on Sunday?	_____	_____
8 What paper / read?	_____	_____
9 / be at home on Sunday evening?	_____	_____
10 How / relax on Sunday evening?	_____	_____



- c** Find a new partner. Ask and answer questions about your old partner's week and weekend.

Does he go to the gym during the week?  Yes, he does. He goes on Wednesday night.

## 9A IS THERE A TV? WHERE IS IT? Student A

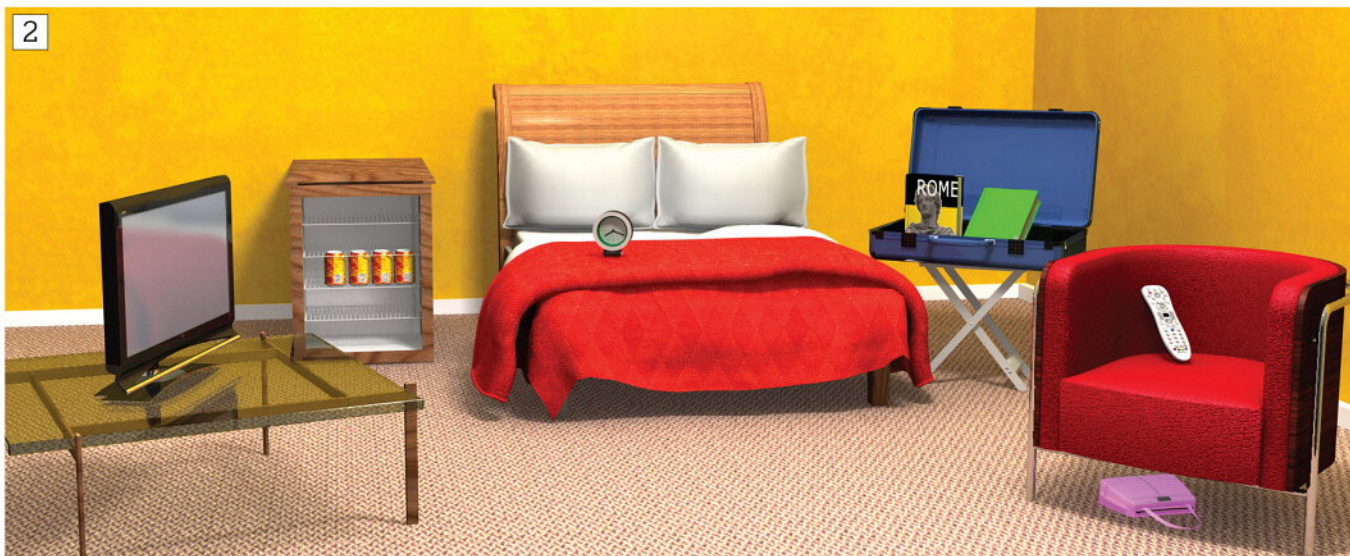
a Ask B questions about the things below for picture 1.

- Ask *Is there a...?* or *Are there any...?*

laptop lamp sodas coat TV newspapers books umbrella towels keys

- If B answers *Yes*, ask *Where is it?* or *Where are they?* Draw the thing(s) in the right places in picture 1.

b Answer B's questions about picture 2.



## 9B WHERE WERE THEY? Student A

a Ask B your questions.

- 1 Where was Megan Fox? (She was in the park.)
- 2 Where was Jackie Chan? (He was on a plane.)
- 3 Where was Halle Berry? (She was at school.)
- 4 Where was Hugh Jackman? (He was in a car.)
- 5 Where was Kanye West? (He was at the movie theater.)

b Answer B's questions.

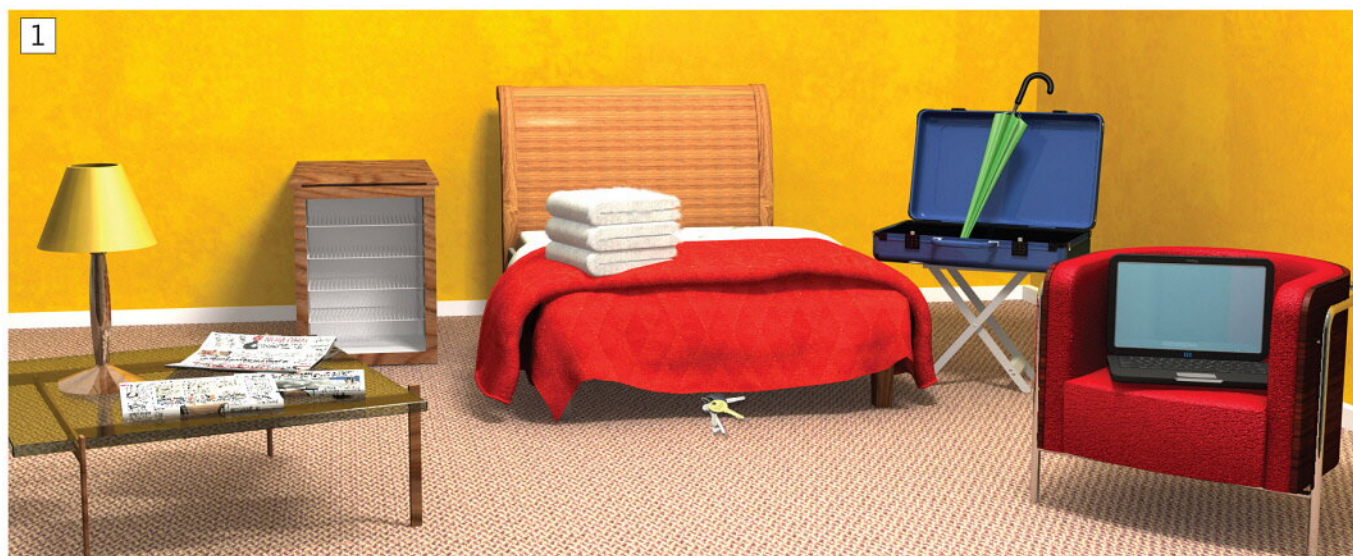
# Communication

## 9A IS THERE A TV? WHERE IS IT? Student B

- a Answer A's questions about picture 1.
- b Ask A questions about the things below for picture 2.
- Ask *Is there a...?* or *Are there any...?*

TV towels sodas pillows remote control books laptop clock bag pens

- If A answers *Yes*, ask *Where is it?* or *Where are they?* Draw the thing(s) in the right places in picture 2.



## 9B WHERE WERE THEY? Student B

- a Answer A's questions.
- b Ask A your questions.
- 1 Where was Russell Crowe? (He was at a restaurant.)
  - 2 Where was Jennifer Lopez? (She was in bed.)
  - 3 Where was Simon Cowell? (He was at the beach.)
  - 4 Where was Peter Jackson? (He was in the kitchen.)
  - 5 Where was Lady Gaga? (She was on a bus.)

## 10B LIFE IN A DAY Student A + B

- a** What did you do yesterday? Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Write your partner's answers.

*What time did you get up yesterday?* *I got up at 6:30 in the morning.*

### Life in a day for ...

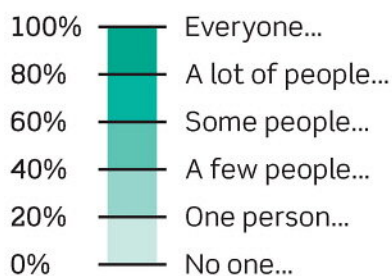
	YOU	YOUR PARTNER
1 What time / get up yesterday?	_____	_____
2 / have breakfast? What / have?	_____	_____
3 What / drink at breakfast?	_____	_____
4 / read the newspaper at breakfast?	_____	_____
5 / go to work or school? How / get there?	_____	_____
6 What time / start work or school?	_____	_____
7 / take a break? What / do?	_____	_____
8 Where / have lunch? / like it?	_____	_____
9 What / do after work or school?	_____	_____
10 / cook dinner? Who / make dinner for?	_____	_____
11 / do housework?	_____	_____
12 / help people yesterday? What / do?	_____	_____
13 / watch TV? What / watch?	_____	_____
14 What time / go to bed?	_____	_____
15 do something interesting? What / do?	_____	_____



- b** Work in groups. Tell your group about your old partner's answers.

*Fareed got up at 6:30 in the morning. He didn't shave his face.* *Bianca had cold pizza for breakfast!*

- c** Talk about "life in a day" for your classmates. Try to make ten sentences. Use the words below.



*Everyone got up after 6:00.  
One person made dinner for his boss.  
No one drank soda at breakfast.*

## 1 COMPLETING A FORM

- a Look at the form. Match each part with a question below.
- Are you married? \_\_\_\_\_
  - What's your home phone number? \_\_\_\_\_
  - What's your zip code? \_\_\_\_\_
  - How old are you? \_\_\_\_\_
  - What's your email? \_\_\_\_\_
  - What's your name? I \_\_\_\_\_
  - What's your cell phone number? \_\_\_\_\_
  - What's your address? \_\_\_\_\_
- b Complete the form for you. Check (✓) your title, too.



### Capital letters

Adam Davis	NOT adam davis
245 Green Street	NOT 245-green-street
Miami, Florida	NOT miami, florida



### Titles

Mr. = a man; Ms. = a woman; Mrs. = a married woman

◀ p.13

## 2 POSTING A COMMENT

- a Read Amanda's comment. What does *healthy* mean?
- b Look at the examples below.



### Punctuation

<b>period ( . )</b>	<i>I have a healthy breakfast.</i> NOT <i>I have a healthy breakfast</i>
<b>question mark (?)</b>	<i>What do you have for breakfast?</i> NOT <i>What do you have for breakfast.</i>
<b>exclamation point (!)</b>	<i>They're not good for you!</i> (= I'm happy, excited, angry...)

Put a space ( ) after punctuation.  
*I have milk, cereal, and a lot of fruit. I drink orange juice.*  
 NOT *I have milk, cereal, and a lot of fruit. I drink orange juice.*

- c Circle the punctuation in the website and in Amanda's comment.
- d Write a comment about your breakfast. What do you eat? What do you drink? Is it healthy?
- e Check your comments for mistakes. Is the punctuation correct?

◀ p.31

### FRIEND WEB

### APPLICATION FORM

1. First name

Last name

Title ☐ Mr. ☐ Ms. ☐ Mrs.

2. Age

3. ☐ Married ☐ Single

4. Email

5. Home phone number

6. Cell phone number

7. Address

8. Zip code

## Let's Chat!

**TODAY'S QUESTION:** What do you have for breakfast?



**Amanda**, Los Angeles


7 MINUTES AGO

What do I eat? I have a healthy breakfast. I have milk, cereal, and a lot of fruit. I drink orange juice. I don't have coffee, eggs, or butter. They're not good for you!

# Writing

## 3 AN EMAIL

- a Read the email from Jessica. Where is she? Is she having fun?
- b Look at the information below.


	<b>Emails</b>	
	<b>Greetings</b>	<i>Hi + name,</i> <i>Dear + name,</i>
	<b>Closings</b>	<i>Best,</i> <i>Love, (family and good friends)</i> <i>See you soon!</i>

- c Imagine you are on vacation. Where are you? What are you doing? Write an email to a friend about it.
- d Check your email for mistakes. Are the greeting and closing correct?

◀ p.47

## 4 A BLOG POST

- a Read Tyler's blog. Why was his day different?
- b Look at the information below.

	<b>Putting events in order</b>	
	<b>First</b>	<i>First, I got up at 6:30.</i>
	<b>Next</b>	<i>Next, I took a shower.</i>
	<b>Then</b>	<i>Then I looked in the mirror.</i>
	<b>After that</b>	<i>After that, I went to my new office.</i>
	<b>Finally</b>	<i>Finally, I went home.</i>

- c What did you do yesterday? Write a blog about your day.
- d Check your blog for mistakes. Did you use *first*, *next*, *then*, *after that*, and *finally* to put events in order?

◀ p.61

## 5 AN INVITATION

- a Read the email and answer the questions.
  - 1 What kind of party is it?
  - 2 When is it?
  - 3 Where is it?
  - 4 How can you get to the party?
  - 5 What can people bring?
- b Write an email to a friend and invite them to a party. Make sure you include the answers to the questions in a.
- c Check your email for mistakes. Did you include all of the important information?

◀ p.69

**From:** Jessica [jfranks@topmail.net]  
**To:** Lauren Lee [LL1991@netlink.com]  
**Subject:** WOW!

Hi Lauren,

I'm on vacation in Turkey. It's great! I'm in a beautiful place called Cappadocia. I'm staying in a cool hotel. My room is a cave in a mountain!

Right now I'm eating breakfast and I'm enjoying the view. Look at this picture. Hot air balloons are flying very close to the hotel. It's so cool!

See you soon!  
Jessica



## A BIG DAY

by Tyler 17 hours ago

Yesterday was a big day for me. It was the first day of my new job!

First, I got up at 6:30. I usually get up at 8:00 or 8:30. I was very excited!

Next, I took a shower and got dressed. Then I looked in the mirror for a long time. Did my suit look OK? I was excited *and* nervous.

After that, I went to my new office by taxi. I didn't want to be late! My new boss greeted me with a big smile. Good!

In the afternoon, I had lunch at a restaurant with my new co-workers. We talked and laughed a lot.

Finally, I went home. I had dinner and went to bed early, at 9:00. I was really tired!

Hi Tony and Yuki,

Would you like to come to a dinner party at my house? It's on Friday, March 4. Can you come at 7:30?

I want to make pasta with meat and vegetables. Is that OK? You guys eat meat, right?

You can take the B73 bus to my place. Get off the bus at Fourth Avenue. Then go straight and turn right on West Street. I'm at 173 West Street.

I hope you can come! Oh, and can you bring something to drink?

Best,  
Amanda

# Listening

1 19)))

**Woman** Where's she from?

**Man** She's from England.

**Woman** Is he from England, too?

**Man** No, he isn't. He's from Canada.

**Woman** Is the concert tomorrow?

**Man** Yes, it is. It's at seven.

**Woman** Let's go!

1 33)))

1 ATM

2 BMW

3 TV

4 PC

5 DJ

6 www

1 34)))

**Receptionist** Good morning.

**Woman** Hello. I'm Eva Flores. I have a reservation.

**Receptionist** How do you spell your last name?

**Woman** F-L-O-R-E-S.

**Receptionist** Excuse me?

**Woman** F-L-O-R-E-S.

**Receptionist** Thank you.

1 36)))

**Interviewer** What's your name?

**James** My name's James.

**Interviewer** How do you spell it?

**James** J-A-M-E-S.

1 37)))

**Interviewer** Where are you from?

**James** I'm from England.

1 38)))

**Interviewer** What's your name?

**Speaker 1** My name's Natasha.

**Interviewer** How do you spell it?

**Speaker 1** N-A-T-A-S-H-A.

**Interviewer** Where are you from?

**Speaker 1** I'm from New York, in the United States.

**Interviewer** What's your name?

**Speaker 2** My name is Franco.

**Interviewer** How do you spell it?

**Speaker 2** F-R-A-N-C-O.

**Interviewer** Where are you from?

**Speaker 2** I'm from Argentina.

**Interviewer** What's your name?

**Speaker 3** My name is Barbara.

**Interviewer** How do you spell it?

**Speaker 3** B-A-R-B-A-R-A.

**Interviewer** Where are you from?

**Speaker 3** I am from New York.

1 41)))

1 **Teacher** Open your books, please.  
Go to page 7.

**Student** Excuse me. Can you repeat that, please?

**Teacher** Go to page 7.

2 **Student** What's *livro* in English?

**Teacher** Book.

3 **Student** Excuse me. How do you spell "hotel"?

**Teacher** H-O-T-E-L.

1 52)))

1 **Tom** Hi, Bob. Where are you?

**Bob** Hello, Tom. I'm in my car. Uh, what's your address?

**Tom** It's 503 State Street.

**Bob** Excuse me?

**Tom** 503 State Street.

**Bob** Oh. It isn't 503 Lake Street.

**Tom** No, it isn't. Are you lost?

**Bob** Yes, I am.

2 **Girl 1** Look at this picture.

**Girl 2** Who is he?

**Girl 1** He's my friend.

**Girl 2** Wow! He's very good-looking. What's his name?

**Girl 1** Adam.

**Girl 2** Is he married?

**Girl 1** No, he isn't.

**Girl 2** How old is he?

**Girl 1** He's twenty-six.

**Girl 2** What's his number?

1 58)))

1 13

2 40

3 50

4 16

5 70

6 18

7 19

1 59)))

1 **Woman** How old are you?

**Man** I'm 18.

2 **Woman** Your friend is very good-looking. How old is he?

**Man** He's 29.

3 **Woman 1** Liz, what's your last name?

**Woman 2** It's Thomas.

4 **Man 1** Look. It's Sarah.

**Man 2** Who's Sarah?

**Man 1** She's my teacher.

5 **Woman** Hi, Sam. How are you?

**Man** I'm good, thanks.

1 71)))

1 **Man** Excuse me, miss! Is this your bag?

**Woman** Oh! Yes, it is! Thank you.

2 **Receptionist** Good afternoon.

**Man 1** Hello. We're Paul Jones and Martin Smith. We have reservations.

**Receptionist** Let's see ... Yes. Rooms 625 and 626. Here are your keys.

**Man 1** Thank you.

**Man 2** Thanks!

3 **Woman** What's that music?

**Man** Sorry, it's my cell phone. Oh, hi, Andy.

4 **Man** Excuse me, what's this word?

**Woman** Look in the dictionary.

5 **Man** How much is it?

**Woman** Twenty dollars.

**Man** Is a credit card OK?

**Woman** Yes, of course.

22)))

- 1 **Amy** Excuse me. What are those?  
**Joe** They're gloves.  
**Amy** Oh, they're cute! And is that a hat?  
**Joe** Yes, it is.  
**Amy** Are these sunglasses?  
**Joe** Yes, they are. They're fifteen dollars.  
**Amy** Oh! That's a lot. I'm sorry. Bye.

- 2 **Joe** Excuse me, miss! Is this your bag?  
**Amy** Oh, yes, it is. Thanks!  
**Joe** You're welcome. So, how about ten dollars for the sunglasses?  
**Amy** Really? OK!

28)))

- 1 **Amy** What's this?  
**Joe** It's a postcard.  
2 **Amy** Are these sunglasses?  
**Joe** Yes, they are.  
3 **Amy** Is that a toy?  
**Joe** No, it isn't. It's a hat.  
4 **Amy** What are those?  
**Joe** They're gloves.

211)))

- 1 **Woman** The New York Times, please.  
**Man** Here you are.  
**Woman** How much is it?  
**Man** It's a dollar twenty-five.  
2 **Man** A phone card, please.  
**Woman** For how much?  
**Man** Fifteen euros, please.  
**Woman** Here you are.  
**Man** Thanks.  
3 **Man 1** A memory card, please.  
**Man 2** Two gigs or four?  
**Man 1** Two, please. How much is it?  
**Man 2** Nine ninety-nine.  
**Man 1** Is a credit card OK?  
**Man 2** Sure.  
4 **Woman** A one way ticket to Bristol, please.  
**Man** Thirty pounds twenty p please.  
**Woman** Here you are.  
**Man** Have a good trip.  
**Woman** Thank you.

214)))

- Waiter** Welcome to City Coffee.  
**Woman** Hi, a coffee and a chocolate brownie, please.

- Waiter** What kind of coffee? Espresso, Americano, cappuccino, or latte?  
**Woman** A cappuccino, please.  
**Waiter** Regular or large?  
**Woman** Regular. How much is it?  
**Waiter** Six dollars and twenty cents, please.  
**Woman** Here you are.  
**Waiter** Thanks. Here's your change.

216)))

- Interviewer** What kind of coffee is that?  
**James** This is a large latte.

217)))

- Interviewer** How much is it?  
**James** It's \$4.25.

218)))

- Interviewer** What kind of coffee is that?  
**Ryder** This is a regular latte.  
**Interviewer** How much is it?  
**Ryder** It's \$2.75.

- Interviewer** What kind of coffee is that?  
**Cristina** It's a regular coffee.  
**Interviewer** How much is it?  
**Cristina** It's \$2.25.

- Interviewer** What kind of coffee is that?  
**Kurt** It's a large cappuccino.  
**Interviewer** How much is it?  
**Kurt** It's \$4.50.

225)))

- 1 **Woman** Hi, Eric. Is this a picture of your family?  
**Eric** Yes, it is.  
**Woman** Is that your mother?  
**Eric** Yes. That's my mother.  
2 **Woman** Who is that? Is she your wife?  
**Eric** No, she isn't. She's my sister.  
**Woman** Oh, I see. She's very pretty.  
3 **Woman** Who are they?  
**Eric** They're my sister's children.  
**Woman** Oh, they're cute. How old are they?  
**Eric** Her daughter is four and her son is seven.  
4 **Woman** Who is that? Is he your sister's husband?  
**Eric** No, he isn't.  
**Woman** Oh. Who is he?  
**Eric** I don't know. He isn't in our family.

239)))

- Hair stylist** Hello. Is this your first time here?  
**Woman** Yes, it is.  
**Hair stylist** Do you live near here?  
**Woman** No, I don't. I live downtown.  
**Hair stylist** Oh, nice. So, do you want long hair? Short hair?  
**Woman** I don't know. Something different.  
**Hair stylist** Do you want a coffee?  
**Woman** No, thanks. I don't drink coffee.  
**Hair stylist** Do you want a magazine?  
**Woman** Yes, please. Oh, look. Angelina Jolie's children.  
**Hair stylist** Do you have children?  
**Woman** Yes, I do. I have two boys.  
**Hair stylist** How old are they?  
**Woman** Eight and ten.

- .....  
**Woman** It's very short.  
**Hair stylist** Don't worry. Wait.

- .....  
**Hair stylist** OK. Do you like it?

240)))

- Hair stylist** OK. Do you like it?  
**Woman** No, I don't. It's terrible.

244)))

- Taxi driver** Good morning!  
**Woman** Hello. Geary Street, please.  
**Taxi driver** OK. The traffic is bad this morning.  
**Woman** Yes. It's terrible.  
**Taxi driver** Do you live in San Francisco?  
**Woman** Yes, I do.  
**Taxi driver** Are you OK? What's the problem?  
**Woman** I don't like my new haircut.  
**Taxi driver** Why not? I like it.  
**Woman** Really? Do you like it?  
**Taxi driver** Yes, I do. It's great!  
**Woman** Thanks.  
**Taxi driver** OK. We're on Geary Street now.  
**Woman** Great. Please stop over there, at Macy's. I want a new bag.  
**Taxi driver** OK. That's \$14.50.  
**Woman** Here's \$17. Keep the change.  
**Taxi driver** Thanks a lot! Have a nice day.

2 51)))

**Interviewer** So, Jessie, your parents are from China. Do you eat Chinese food at home?

**Jessie** Uh, yes and no. For breakfast, we usually have cereal.

**Interviewer** Cereal?

**Jessie** Yes, cereal or toast. And coffee, not tea. Not very Chinese, I know!

**Interviewer** What do you have for lunch?

**Jessie** I have fast food near school – pizza or a hamburger and soda.

**Interviewer** Oh. When do you eat Chinese food?

**Jessie** For dinner! My mother makes a big Chinese meal.

**Interviewer** Is it spicy?

**Jessie** Sometimes. We have rice with vegetables and meat. Or fish. My father loves fish. Fish heads are his favorite!

**Interviewer** Wow. So, what's your favorite meal?

**Jessie** Dinner, of course!

2 60)))

1 It's nine o'clock.

2 It's twenty after three.

3 It's nine thirty.

4 It's ten to ten.

5 It's quarter after nine.

6 It's quarter to six.

2 61)))

**Interviewer** What time do you get up during the week?

**Andrew** During the week, I get up at 7:00 a.m.

**Interviewer** What time do you go to bed during the week?

**Andrew** I go to bed at 11:00 p.m.

2 62)))

**Interviewer** What time do you get up on the weekend?

**Andrew** On the weekend I get up at 10:30.

**Interviewer** What time do you go to bed on the weekend?

**Andrew** On the weekend I go to bed at 2:00 a.m.

2 63)))

**Interviewer** What time do you get up during the week?

**Joe** It's usually about seven, seven o'clock in the morning.

**Interviewer** What time do you go to bed during the week?

**Joe** About 12:30 in the morning.

**Interviewer** What time do you get up on the weekend?

**Joe** Nine o'clock.

**Interviewer** What time do you go to bed on the weekend?

**Joe** Probably closer to 2:00 a.m.

**Interviewer** What time do you get up during the week?

**Samantha** During the week I get up at eight or nine o'clock in the morning.

**Interviewer** What time do you go to bed during the week?

**Samantha** During the week I go to bed at 11:00 or 12:00 at night.

**Interviewer** What time do you get up on the weekend?

**Samantha** On the weekends I get up at eleven o'clock in the morning.

**Interviewer** What time do you go to bed on the weekend?

**Samantha** I go to bed on the weekends at one o'clock in the morning or two o'clock in the morning.

**Interviewer** What time do you get up during the week?

**Ryder** During the week I get up at quarter to seven.

**Interviewer** What time do you go to bed during the week?

**Ryder** During the week I go to bed at quarter to eleven.

**Interviewer** What time do you get up on the weekend?

**Ryder** On the weekend I get up at around noon.

**Interviewer** What time do you go to bed on the weekend?

**Ryder** On the weekend I normally go to bed around 3:00 a.m.

**Interviewer** What time do you get up during the week?

**Amber** During the week I usually get up around 8:00 a.m.

**Interviewer** What time do you go to bed during the week?

**Amber** And I usually go to bed during the week at around 11:00 p.m.

**Interviewer** What time do you get up on the weekend?

**Amber** On the weekends...it usually depends, but I try to get up around 10:00 a.m.

**Interviewer** What time do you go to bed on the weekend?

**Amber** Depending on the night, probably around 1:00 or 2:00 a.m.

3 2)))

**Interviewer** What time do you get up?

**Andrew** I usually get up around nine or 9:30.

**Interviewer** What do you do next?

**Andrew** I check my email.

**Interviewer** Do you take a shower?

**Andrew** Yes, every morning.

**Interviewer** What do you have for breakfast?

**Andrew** A banana.

**Interviewer** Do you have breakfast sitting down or standing up?

**Andrew** Sitting down.

**Interviewer** What time do you go to school?

**Andrew** It depends. I have class at eleven on Wednesdays. The other days I have class in the afternoon.

**Interviewer** Are you in a hurry in the morning?

**Andrew** No, I usually have a lot of time.

**Interviewer** Do you like mornings?

**Andrew** No. No, I don't.

# Listening

3 26)))

1 **Man** What's the date today?

**Woman** It's May fourth.

**Man** Really? I think it's May fifth.

2 **Woman** When's your birthday?

**Man** July twentieth.

3 28)))

**Interviewer** When's your birthday?

**Ria** My birthday is February 8th.

3 29)))

**Interviewer** What do you usually do on your birthday?

**Ria** I usually have dinner with my friends and eat cake.

3 30)))

**Interviewer** When's your birthday?

**Max** It is November 13th.

**Interviewer** What do you usually do on your birthday?

**Max** Normally I have a small party, I have some cake, open some presents.

.....  
**Interviewer** When's your birthday?

**Cristina** August 9th.

**Interviewer** What do you usually do on your birthday?

**Cristina** I usually spend time with my friends, or have dinner, see my family.

.....  
**Interviewer** When's your birthday?

**Ivan** My birthday is on 21st of March, 1990.

**Interviewer** What do you usually do on your birthday?

**Ivan** I usually celebrate my birthday with my friends and family.

.....  
**Interviewer** When's your birthday?

**James** My birthday is September the 29th.

**Interviewer** What do you usually do on your birthday?

**James** I usually go for a meal with my family – with my children and my wife.

3 32)))

**Amy** OK. I give up. Where are you?

**Mia** I'm in your city!

**Amy** What, you're here in New York?

**Mia** That's right. I'm in New York! I'm sitting in a French cafe, I'm drinking Italian coffee, and I'm listening to Brazilian music.

**Amy** Wow, that's cool. Only in New York!

**Mia** I know. Anyway, I'm in your neighborhood! Come have a coffee with me!

3 48)))

**Kim** So, do you like it?

**Matt** Uh... I don't know. There isn't electricity at night, and there isn't a TV.

**Kim** Yes, but there's a pool, there's a restaurant, and it's in the park.

**Matt** Well, how much is it?

**Kim** Oh, it's not very expensive. Actually, it's cheap!

**Matt** Really? Then I like it. Let's stay there!

3 64)))

1 **Tourist** Excuse me! Is there a pharmacy near here?

**Man** A pharmacy? Let me think. Yes, I know. Go straight ahead and turn right.

**Tourist** Go straight, and make a right?

**Man** Yes. Then go straight ahead about 100 yards and make a left.

**Tourist** Turn left?

**Man** Yes, and then go straight and turn right.

**Tourist** Turn right. OK.

**Man** The pharmacy is on the right. You can't miss it.

**Tourist** Thank you.

**Man** No problem.

2 **Tourist** Excuse me. Where's the museum?

**Man** I'm sorry. I don't know. I don't live here.

**Tourist** Excuse me. Where's the museum?

**Woman** The museum?

**Tourist** Yes. Is it near here?

**Woman** Sure. Go straight down this street, and turn left. Then make a right, and go straight ahead. Then turn left, and the museum is on the left. It's on the corner.

**Tourist** Thank you very much.

**Woman** Oh, excuse me!

**Tourist** Yeah?

**Woman** You can't go to the museum today. It's closed on Mondays.

**Tourist** Oh. OK.

3 65)))

**Interviewer** Is there a bank near here?

**James** Yes, there's one on 13th Street, next to the parking lot.

3 66)))

**Interviewer** Is there a hospital near here?

**Kurt** There is a hospital on 23rd Street between 6th and 7th.

.....  
**Interviewer** Is there a restaurant near here?

**Natasha** Yes, straight ahead and it's next to the bank.

**Interviewer** Is there a pharmacy near here?

**Andrew** There's a pharmacy across from the bank.

.....  
**Interviewer** Is there a school near here?

**Christopher** Yes, it's NYU. It's right across the park here.

4 8)))

**Linda** Hello?

**Ben** Hi, honey.

**Linda** Oh, hi, Dad. How's Paris?

**Ben** Fine. A lot of work. Did you have a good day?

**Linda** It was OK.

**Ben** What did you do?

**Linda** I got up early. I went to school.

**Ben** How was it?  
**Linda** Good! We didn't have classes. We went to an art museum.  
**Ben** Oh, nice. Did you have lunch there?  
**Linda** Yes, we had lunch at the cafe. And then I went shopping with Katy.  
**Ben** Did you do your homework?  
**Linda** Yes, Dad. I did my homework after dinner, like always.  
**Ben** Who's that, Linda?

4 9)))

**Ben** Who's that, Linda?  
**Linda** What?  
**Ben** I can hear people in the house.  
**Linda** Oh, it's just the TV.  
**Ben** Can I speak to your mother?  
**Linda** Mom? She's out. She went to the movies with her friends.  
**Ben** Are you alone?  
**Linda** Yes, I am.  
**Ben** Linda, is somebody with you?  
**Linda** Uh... Yes, Dad. Annie, Sophie, and Tony are here.  
**Ben** Oh. Who are they? And who's Tony?  
**Linda** He's a friend, Dad. He's very nice, and Sophie and Annie are too.

4 21)))

**Brian** Here. Look at my phone. There's a lot of great music on it.  
**Rachel** Let me see. Oh, you have The Black Eyed Peas. I like them.  
**Brian** Yeah, they're fantastic.  
**Rachel** And who's Yo Yo Ma? I don't know him.  
**Brian** He plays classical music. He's great.  
**Rachel** Oh. I like Placido Domingo. What do you think of him?  
**Brian** I really like him.  
**Rachel** Good. And you have Shakira.  
**Brian** Yeah. But I think she's awful.  
**Rachel** Really? I love her. Oh wow! You have Katy Perry!  
**Brian** Yeah. What do you think of her?  
**Rachel** Um, I can't stand her.  
**Brian** Well, I really like her.  
**Rachel** Ha! You like her because she's cute.

4 24)))

**Man** I opened the door of my apartment and turned on the light. Oh, no! My apartment looked very different. There was no TV, no radio. There weren't any pictures on the walls. I went into my bedroom. My laptop

wasn't there! But there was a nice smell. Chanel Number 5.

4 31)))

1 **John** Hey, Chris. Would you like to watch the game with me on Sunday?  
**Chris** Sorry, I can't. Sunday is my sister's party. Would you like to come?  
**John** Yes, I'd love to. Thanks!  
**Chris** Great. It starts at 2:30. I can email you the directions.  
**John** OK. Can I bring something?  
**Chris** Yes. Bring something to drink.  
**John** No problem.  
2 **Chris** Hi, John! I'm glad you came.  
**John** Me too. Here, I brought some soda.  
**Chris** Great, thanks. Would you like a burger?  
**John** Uh ... no thanks.  
**Chris** OK. Would you like a hot dog?  
**John** No, thanks.  
**Chris** Oh. Is there a problem?  
**John** Well, I don't eat meat.  
**Chris** Oh, no problem. There's salad too. Would you like some salad?  
**John** Yes, please!

4 34)))

1 **Woman** Erica, are you busy next Saturday?  
**Erica** No, I'm not. Why?  
**Woman** Would you like to come to a dinner party at my place?  
**Erica** Sure, I'd love to. What can I bring?  
**Woman** Oh, just bring something to drink. Come over around 7:30.  
**Erica** Great. See you Saturday!  
2 **Man** Tomorrow is my wife's birthday. Would you like to come to a party for her?  
**Woman** Yes, I'd love to. When is it?  
**Man** It's at 6:30 at our house.  
**Woman** OK. Thanks! Oh, can I bring something?  
**Man** No, no. She doesn't want gifts.  
**Woman** Really? Maybe I can bring a birthday card.  
**Man** Well, yes. That's OK.  
3 **Woman** Do you have plans for July fourth?  
**Man** No, not yet.  
**Woman** Good. Would you like to come to a barbecue at my house?

**Man** Yeah, I'd love to. Thanks!

**Woman** Great! Oh, and can you bring some soda?

**Man** Of course! No problem.

4 35)))

**Interviewer** When did you last go to a party?  
**Skylar** I last went to a party in August, before I left for school.

4 36)))

**Interviewer** What did you do there?  
**Skylar** At the party...it was a going away party, I said good bye to all of my friends.

4 37)))

**Interviewer** Did you bring anything?  
**Skylar** I brought food, and snacks, and games for the party.

4 38)))

**Interviewer** When did you last go to a party?  
**Barbara** I went to a soiree, which was really a party for a friend's birthday in July.  
**Interviewer** What did you do there?  
**Barbara** I ate, I don't drink, and I talked to a lot of people.  
**Interviewer** Did you bring anything?  
**Barbara** Yes, I brought a beautiful plant.

**Interviewer** When did you last go to a party?

**Max** About two weeks ago.

**Interviewer** What did you do there?

**Max** I just listened and talked with people a little bit. That's all.

**Interviewer** Did you bring anything?

**Max** I brought some flowers.

**Interviewer** When did you last go to a party?

**Amber** I went to a party last week.

**Interviewer** What did you do there?

**Amber** I made new friends at the party.

**Interviewer** Did you bring anything?

**Amber** Yes, I brought a gift and a birthday card because it was someone's birthday.

4 44)))

**Interviewer** I'm here with Dan Grec. He just drove from the Arctic Ocean in Alaska to the southern end of Argentina. Dan, how was your trip?

**Dan** It was amazing and fantastic. I had a great time.

**Interviewer** How long did it take?

**Dan** About two years. I drove over 65,000 kilometers and finally arrived in Ushuaia, Argentina. I visited Canada, the US, Mexico, and a lot of countries in Central and South America.

**Interviewer** Did you drive all the way?

**Dan** Almost. There isn't a road from Panama to Colombia, so I took a boat.

**Interviewer** Did you learn Spanish?

**Dan** Yes, I did. My Spanish isn't fantastic, but it's pretty good now. I practiced every day.

**Interviewer** Did you camp?

**Dan** Yes, I camped on the side of the road to save money. I sometimes stayed in small hotels and took a shower. Also, local people invited me to stay in their homes. That was amazing.

**Interviewer** Did you have any problems?

**Dan** No, not really. The car didn't have any big problems. My maps were terrible, so I sometimes got lost. But it was OK.

**Interviewer** Did you meet new friends?

**Dan** Yes, I met a lot of interesting people! I met two brothers, Seth and Parker. They rode their bicycles from Alaska to Argentina. I also met very friendly people in the mountains in Ecuador. I stayed in Ecuador for five months and worked in a hotel.

**Interviewer** What was your favorite place?

**Dan** I have so many favorite places! Alaska was beautiful. I saw icebergs there. I climbed volcanos in Guatemala and Ecuador. In Chile, I saw llamas and penguins together. That was great.

**Interviewer** How was the food on your trip?

**Dan** Great. I loved the spicy tacos in Mexico and the steak in Argentina. I tried llama in Bolivia and thought it was OK.

**Interviewer** Do you have plans for your next trip?

**Dan** Yes, I'm going to travel across Africa. I'm planning that trip now.

**Interviewer** Are you going to write about it on your blog?

**Dan** Yes, of course.

# 1

## 1A present tense verb *be*: *I* and *you* ⊕, ⊖, and ⊗

1 6))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

Full form	Contraction
<b>⊕ = affirmative form</b> <b>I am</b> Henry. <b>You are</b> in my class.	<b>I'm</b> Henry. <b>You're</b> in my class.
<b>⊖ = negative form</b> <b>I am not</b> in number 1. <b>You are not</b> a student.	<b>I'm not</b> in number 1. <b>You aren't</b> a student.

⊗ = question form	✓ = affirmative short answer	✗ = negative short answer
<b>Am I</b> in room 2? <b>Are you</b> Lisa?	Yes, <b>you are</b> . Yes, <b>I am</b> .	No, <b>you aren't</b> . No, <b>I'm not</b> .

- *am* and *are* are both forms of the verb *be*.
- *I'm* Henry. **NOT** *Am* Henry.
- *I'm* Henry. **NOT** *i'm* Henry.
- *I'm not* Michelle. **NOT** *Iamn't* Michelle.
- You can also contract *are not* like this:  
*You're not* a student.

- In questions, put *am* before *I*.  
*Am I* in room 2? **NOT** *I am* in room 2?
- In questions, put *are* before *you*.  
*Are you* in my class? **NOT** *You are* in my class?
- Don't use contractions in affirmative short answers.  
*Are you a student?* Yes, **I am**. **NOT** Yes, *I'm*.

## 1B present tense verb *be*: *he*, *she*, *it* ⊕, ⊖, and ⊗

1 21))) Listen and repeat the **examples**. Then read the rules.

Full form	Contraction
<b>⊕</b> I am Henry. You are in my class. <b>He is</b> from Brazil. <b>She is</b> from Spain. <b>It is</b> from China.	<b>I'm</b> Henry. <b>You're</b> in my class. <b>He's</b> from Brazil. <b>She's</b> from Spain. <b>It's</b> from China.
<b>⊖</b> I am not in number 1. You are not a student. <b>He is not</b> from the US. <b>She is not</b> from Japan. <b>It is not</b> from Mexico.	<b>I'm not</b> in number 1. <b>You aren't</b> a student. <b>He isn't</b> from the US. <b>She isn't</b> from Japan. <b>It isn't</b> from Mexico.

⊗	✓	✗
Am I in room 2? Are you Lisa? <b>Is he</b> Henry? <b>Is she</b> from Peru? <b>Is it</b> good?	Yes, you are. Yes, I am. <b>Yes, he is.</b> <b>Yes, she is.</b> <b>Yes, it is.</b>	No, you aren't. No, I'm not. <b>No, he isn't.</b> <b>No, she isn't.</b> <b>No, it isn't.</b>

⊗ with *What* and *Where*  
**What's your name?**  
**Where are you from?**  
**Where's he from?**

- *am*, *are*, and *is* are all forms of the verb *be*.
- **he** = man (♂), **she** = woman (♀), **it** = thing
- You can also contract *is not* like this:  
*He's not* from the US.  
*She's not* from Japan.  
*It's not* from Mexico.

- In questions, put *is* before *he*, *she*, and *it*.  
*Is he* from Japan? **NOT** *He is* from Japan?  
*Is she* Adele? **NOT** *She is* Adele?  
*Is it* from England? **NOT** *It is* from England?
- Don't use contractions in affirmative short answers.  
*Is he a student?* Yes, **he is**. **NOT** Yes, *he's*.  
*Is she* from China? Yes, **she is**. **NOT** Yes, *she's*.  
*Is it* from Peru? Yes, **it is**. **NOT** Yes, *it's*.

## 1A

a Complete with *I'm* or *You're*.

A Hello. I'm Maria.  
What's your name?

B Hi. \_\_\_\_\_ Tony.



\_\_\_\_\_ in number 4.



Hello. \_\_\_\_\_ your teacher.  
\_\_\_\_\_ in my class.



\_\_\_\_\_ in room 3.

b Complete with *I'm not* and *You aren't*.

I'm not Tom.  
I'm Tony.



\_\_\_\_\_ a student.  
I'm a teacher.



You're a student.  
\_\_\_\_\_ a teacher.



\_\_\_\_\_ in room 3.

c Make questions.

1 you / Sam?

Are you Sam?

2 you / in number 3?

3 I / in room 4?

4 you / Henry?

5 I / in class 3?

d Complete the conversations. Use contractions where possible.

1 A Hello. Are you Liz?

B No, I'm not. I \_\_\_\_\_ Maria.

2 A \_\_\_\_\_ I in class 8?

B No, you \_\_\_\_\_. You're in class 6.

3 A \_\_\_\_\_ you in room 4?

B No, I'm \_\_\_\_\_. I'm in room 5.

4 A \_\_\_\_\_ you Henry?

B Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. Nice to meet you!

5 A \_\_\_\_\_ I in your class?

B Yes, you \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ your teacher.

◀ p.5

## 1B

a Complete with *He's*, *She's*, or *It's*.

A Where's London?

B It's in England.

1 A Where's Hanoi?

B \_\_\_\_\_ in Vietnam.

2 A Where's Lisa from?

B \_\_\_\_\_ from Canada.

3 A Where's Beijing?

B \_\_\_\_\_ in China.

4 A Where's Mario from?

B \_\_\_\_\_ from Brazil.

5 A Where's Charles from?

B \_\_\_\_\_ from England.

6 A Where's Maria from?

B \_\_\_\_\_ from Peru.

7 A Where's Toronto?

B \_\_\_\_\_ in Canada.

8 A Where's Diego from?

B \_\_\_\_\_ from Mexico.

b Complete with *is*, *'s*, or *isn't*.

1 A Is Ana from Mexico? B No, she \_\_\_\_\_. She \_\_\_\_\_ from Spain.

2 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ Santiago? \_\_\_\_\_ it in Chile? B Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_.

3 A \_\_\_\_\_ Mark from the US? B No, he \_\_\_\_\_ from Canada.

4 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ she from? B She \_\_\_\_\_ from Rio.

5 A \_\_\_\_\_ Robert Pattinson from the United States? B No, he \_\_\_\_\_.  
He \_\_\_\_\_ from England.

6 A \_\_\_\_\_ Lima in Mexico? B No, it \_\_\_\_\_. It \_\_\_\_\_ in Peru.

c Complete the conversations. Use contractions where possible.

1 A Are you from Canada? B No, I \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ from Manchester.

A Where \_\_\_\_\_ Manchester? \_\_\_\_\_ it in the UK? B Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_.

2 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ Alex from? \_\_\_\_\_ he from Mexico? B No, he \_\_\_\_\_.  
He \_\_\_\_\_ from the US.

A What about you? Where \_\_\_\_\_ you from? B I \_\_\_\_\_ from Toronto.

3 A What \_\_\_\_\_ your name? B My name \_\_\_\_\_ Ana. I'm from New York.

A You \_\_\_\_\_ from New York! I \_\_\_\_\_ from New York, too! It \_\_\_\_\_  
a great city.

◀ p.7

# 2

## 2A present tense verb *be*: *we*, *you*, *they*

1 50))) Listen and repeat the **examples**. Then read the rules.

+	-
I'm Korean.	I'm not Korean.
You're late.	You aren't late.
He's Brazilian.	He isn't Brazilian.
She's from Mexico.	She isn't from Mexico.
It's good.	It isn't good.
<b>We're</b> American.	<b>We aren't</b> American.
<b>You're</b> Japanese.	<b>You aren't</b> Japanese.
<b>They're</b> Peruvian.	<b>They aren't</b> Peruvian.

?	✓	✗
Am I late?	Yes, you are.	No, you aren't.
Are you Linda?	Yes, I am.	No, I'm not.
Is he late?	Yes, he is.	No, he isn't.
Is she from Peru?	Yes, she is.	No, she isn't.
Is it good?	Yes, it is.	No, it isn't.
<b>Are we</b> late?	<b>Yes, you are.</b>	<b>No, you aren't.</b>
<b>Are you</b> from the UK?	<b>Yes, we are.</b>	<b>No, we aren't.</b>
<b>Are they</b> Mexican?	<b>Yes, they are.</b>	<b>No, they aren't.</b>

- *we're* = *we are*
- *they're* = *they are*
- *we* and *you* = ♂ and ♀
- *you* singular and *you* plural are the same
- *they* = ♂, ♀, and things

- In questions, put *are* before *we*, *you*, and *they*.  
*Are we in room 4?* **NOT** *We are in room 4?*  
*Are you Vietnamese?* **NOT** *You are Vietnamese?*  
*Are they late?* **NOT** *They are late?*
- Don't use contractions in affirmative short answers.  
*Are we good?* Yes, **you are**. **NOT** *Yes, you're*.  
*Are you Chinese?* Yes, **we are**. **NOT** *Yes, we're*.  
*Are they from Brazil?* Yes, **they are**. **NOT** *Yes, they're*.

## 2B *Wh-* and *How* questions with *be*

1 54))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

Question + Verb	Subject	
<b>Who's</b>	<b>Tom?</b>	He's a friend from work.
<b>What's</b>	<b>your email?</b>	johng@geemail.com
<b>Where are</b>	<b>you from?</b>	I'm from Toronto, Canada.
<b>When's</b>	<b>the concert?</b>	It's on Tuesday.
<b>How are</b>	<b>you?</b>	I'm fine, thanks.
<b>How old is</b>	<b>she?</b>	She's 24.



### Contractions with question words

You can ask questions with *What's*, *Where's*, *When's*, and *How's*.

*What's her name?* (= *What is her name?*)

*Where's he from?* (= *Where is he from?*)

*How's your mother?* (= *How is your mother?*)

Don't contract *is* in a question when the last word is a pronoun (*he*, *she*, *it*, etc.).

*How old is she?* **NOT** *How old's she?*

*Where is he?* **NOT** *Where's he?*

*What is it?* **NOT** *What's it?*

- Word order:  
 + Subject, verb **They're** American.  
 ? Verb, subject **Are they** American?  
 ? Question, verb, subject **Where are they** from?



## 2A

a Change the **bold** word(s) to a pronoun, e.g., *you, he*, etc.

- Luisa and Pedro** are from Lima. *They're* from Lima.  
 1 **Andy and I** are Korean. \_\_\_\_\_'re Korean.  
 2 **Samba music** is from Brazil. \_\_\_\_\_'s Brazilian.  
 3 Are **Tom and Jenny** in Mexico? Are \_\_\_\_\_ in Mexico?  
 4 Where is **Rosa** from? Where's \_\_\_\_\_ from?  
 5 **Maria and Lisa** are Chinese. \_\_\_\_\_'re Chinese.  
 6 **Steve** isn't in my class. \_\_\_\_\_ isn't in my class.  
 7 **You and Max** are in class 3. \_\_\_\_\_'re in class 3.  
 8 **Henry and I** are from the UK. \_\_\_\_\_'re from the UK.

b Make ☐ or ☐ sentences. Use *we, you, or they*.

- Claire and I / Chilean ☐ *We're Chilean.*  
 You and Henry / teachers ☐ *You aren't teachers.*  
 1 Liz and Tom / Canadian ☐ \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 Ana and I / from Mexico City ☐ \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 You, James, and John / students ☐ \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 Mike and Peter / English ☐ \_\_\_\_\_  
 5 Linda and I / in class 4 ☐ \_\_\_\_\_  
 6 You and Lucy / on vacation ☐ \_\_\_\_\_

c Fill in the blanks. Use contractions where possible.

- They *aren't* Portuguese. They *'re* Spanish, from Madrid.  
 1 A \_\_\_\_\_ you from England?  
 B No, we \_\_\_\_\_ English. We \_\_\_\_\_ Canadian.  
 2 A \_\_\_\_\_ they Mexican?  
 B Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_. They \_\_\_\_\_ from Mexico City.  
 3 Kareem \_\_\_\_\_ from Saudi Arabia. He's from Riyadh.  
 4 Sorry, you \_\_\_\_\_ in room 20. You're in room 22.  
 5 A \_\_\_\_\_ your name Maria?  
 B No, it \_\_\_\_\_ Maria. It \_\_\_\_\_ Marta.  
 6 A \_\_\_\_\_ you and Maria Peruvian?  
 B Yes, we \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A \_\_\_\_\_ you from Lima?  
 B No, we \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ from Cusco and  
 Maria \_\_\_\_\_ from Arequipa.  
 7 A \_\_\_\_\_ we late?  
 B Yes, you \_\_\_\_\_. It \_\_\_\_\_ 9:30!  
 8 I \_\_\_\_\_ Yumiko. She \_\_\_\_\_ Emi. We \_\_\_\_\_ from Japan.  
 9 I \_\_\_\_\_ Sara Smith. I'm Sara Simpson.  
 10 They \_\_\_\_\_ from New York. They're from Texas.  
 11 You \_\_\_\_\_ in class 2. You \_\_\_\_\_ in class 3, and  
 she \_\_\_\_\_ in class 4.  
 12 A \_\_\_\_\_ Bianca and Paola Mexican?  
 B No, they \_\_\_\_\_. They \_\_\_\_\_ Brazilian.

◀ p.11

## 2B

a Complete with a question word.

How How old What When Where Who

- A *How* are you?  
 B Good, thanks. And you?  
 1 A \_\_\_\_\_'s the concert?  
 B Tuesday at 7:30.  
 A \_\_\_\_\_ is it?  
 B Chicago.  
 A \_\_\_\_\_'s the address?  
 B 404 Division Street.  
 2 A \_\_\_\_\_ is she?  
 B My friend, Julia.  
 A \_\_\_\_\_'s she from?  
 B Canada.  
 3 A \_\_\_\_\_'s your email?  
 B It's jbl098@yoohoo.com.  
 4 A \_\_\_\_\_ is your teacher?  
 B Mr. Brown. He's from London.  
 A \_\_\_\_\_ is he?  
 B He's 25.

b Order the words to make questions.

you old how are?  
*How old are you?*

- 1 she who is?  
 2 what phone your number is?  
 3 is where room 4?  
 4 in US the Toronto is?  
 5 your English class is when?  
 6 your number is phone 555-9801?  
 7 is his email what?  
 8 Pedro how is old?

c Write questions to complete the dialogue.

- A *What's your name?* B Pedro Guzman.  
 A (1) \_\_\_\_\_? B Monterrey.  
 A Monterrey? (2) \_\_\_\_\_? B It's in Mexico.  
 A Thanks. (3) \_\_\_\_\_? B pguzman@geemail.com  
 A OK. (4) \_\_\_\_\_? B 81-8150-9304.  
 A (5) \_\_\_\_\_? B I'm 19.

◀ p.12

# 3

## 3A a / an; singular and plural nouns

a / an

1 66))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

What is it?  
It's **a** bag.  
It's **a** key  
It's **an** umbrella.  
It's **an** ID card.

- Use *an* with words beginning with a vowel (a, e, i, o, u), e.g., *an email*.
- Use *a* with words beginning with other letters, e.g., *a book, a pen*.

### singular and plural nouns

1 67))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

	
What is <b>it</b> ? It's <b>a book</b> .	What are <b>they</b> ? They're <b>books</b> .
	
They're <b>umbrellas</b> .	They're <b>watches</b> .
	
They're <b>dictionaries</b> .	They're <b>glasses</b> .

- Don't use *a / an* + plural nouns, e.g., *they're books* **NOT** *they're a books*.

#### Spelling rules: plural nouns

Singular	Plural	Spelling
a book an umbrella	books umbrellas	add -s
a class	classes /'klæsɪz/	add -es after ch, sh, s, x
a country a dictionary	countries dictionaries	consonant + y > ies



#### the

Use *the* + singular or plural nouns, e.g., *the door, the windows*.

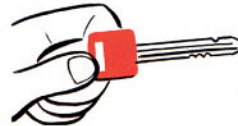


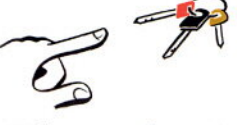
Look at **the** board.

Open **the** door.



Close **the** windows.

## 3B this / that / these / those

2 4))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

	
What's <b>this</b> ? It's a key.	What are <b>these</b> ? They're keys.
	
What's <b>that</b> ? It's a key.	What are <b>those</b> ? They're keys.

- Use *this / these* for things near you (things here).
- Use *that / those* for things that aren't near you (things there or over there).
- *this / that* = singular, *these / those* = plural
- *That* is a book. **NOT** *That it is a book*.
- *These* are keys. **NOT** *These keys*.

		
here	there	over there



#### This, that, these, those

*This, that, these, and those* are pronouns. They can replace *it* and *they* in sentences and questions.

It is my pen. > **This** is my pen.

They can also be adjectives, e.g., **This** book is very nice.

Look at **these** photos.

## 3A

a Complete the chart.

Singular	Plural
1 It's a pen.	<i>They're pens</i> _____.
2 _____.	They're photos. _____.
3 It's a watch.	_____.
4 _____.	They're chairs. _____.
5 It's a dictionary.	_____.
6 It's a credit card.	_____.
7 It's a city.	_____.
8 _____.	They're windows. _____.
9 It's a class.	_____.
10 It's a piece of paper.	_____.
11 _____.	They're keys. _____.
12 It's a bus.	_____.
13 It's a glove.	_____.
14 It's a cell phone.	_____.

b Write questions and answers.

*What is it?* \_\_\_\_\_*It's an umbrella.* \_\_\_\_\_

1 \_\_\_\_\_?



2 \_\_\_\_\_?



3 \_\_\_\_\_?



4 \_\_\_\_\_?



5 \_\_\_\_\_?



◀ p.16

## 3B

a Circle the correct word(s).

- Are **this** / **these** your gloves?
- This** / **Those** is a great hat!
- A What **are those** / **is this**?  
B They're keychains.
- A Who **is that** / **are these**?  
B My friend, Amelia.

b Complete with *is* or *are*. Use contractions where possible.

- Those \_\_\_\_\_ hats.
- A Who \_\_\_\_\_ that?  
B That's my friend, Tom.
- \_\_\_\_\_ these your sunglasses?
- A What \_\_\_\_\_ this?  
B It's a postcard from Wendy in Spain.
- A Those \_\_\_\_\_ cute sunglasses.  
B Yes, but they're \$200.  
A Oh! That \_\_\_\_\_ a lot!
- A \_\_\_\_\_ that a toy?  
B No, it \_\_\_\_\_ a keychain.
- This \_\_\_\_\_ my coffee. Those \_\_\_\_\_ for Tom and Joe.
- A What \_\_\_\_\_ these?  
B They \_\_\_\_\_ toys for Bobby.

c Look at the pictures. Circle the correct word(s).

Meg What is <sup>1</sup>**this** / **these**?Joe <sup>2</sup>**They're** / **It's** a keychain from Hawaii.

Meg Oh, OK.

Joe And <sup>3</sup>**these** / **those** are sunglasses. <sup>4</sup>**It's** / **They're** great!Meg OK. Are <sup>5</sup>**these** / **those** postcards?Joe Yes, <sup>6</sup>**it is** / **they are**. And <sup>7</sup>**that** / **this** is a toy for Jenny.Meg What <sup>8</sup>**is that** / **are those**?Joe <sup>9</sup>**It's** / **They're** a shirt. It's for you!

Meg Oh, uh, thanks.

◀ p.19

# 4

## 4A possessive adjectives; possessive s

### possessive adjectives

2 20))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

I'm from the US.	<b>My</b> name is Sara.
<b>You're</b> Canadian.	<b>Your</b> name is Kim.
<b>He's</b> from China.	<b>His</b> name is Ming.
<b>She's</b> from Japan.	<b>Her</b> name is Satoko.
<b>It's</b> a cat.	<b>Its</b> name is Tiger.
<b>We're</b> British.	<b>Our</b> names are Tom and Pam.
<b>You're</b> from Mexico.	<b>Your</b> names are Ana and Luis.
<b>They're</b> from Brazil.	<b>Their</b> names are Paula and Marco.

- **your** names, **our** books **NOT** *yours names, ours books*
- *I am from Spain.* **NOT** *My am from Spain.*
- *This is your pen.* **NOT** *This is you pen.*
- *its* = for things or animals, e.g., *This is a great phone. Its price is \$99.*



#### it's or its?

*it's* = it is    **It's** a restaurant.  
*its* = possessive    **Its** name is Joe's Cafe.

### possessive s

2 21))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

She is Bill's daughter.  
 Is this Molly's book?  
 She's my brother's wife.

- Use 's after a person to talk about family and things, e.g., *Henry's mother, Amy's laptop.*
- For plural nouns, put the apostrophe (') after s, e.g., *This is my parents' house.*



#### 's

Emma is Maria's daughter. ('s = possessive s)  
 She's American. Her name's Emma. ('s = is)

## 4B adjectives

2 35))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

1 It's a very **big** car.  
 2 My car is **small**.  
 3 BMWs are **expensive**.  
   Ferraris are **fast** cars.  
 4 He's **tall**.  
   She's **tall**.

- 1 Use adjectives before a noun, e.g., *It's a very fast car.* **NOT** *It's a car very fast.*
- 2 Use adjectives after the verb *be*, e.g., *A Ferrari is expensive.* **NOT** *A Ferrari expensive is.*
- 3 Adjectives are the same for singular and plural, e.g., *It's an old car. They're old cars.* **NOT** *They're olds cars.*
- 4 Adjectives are the same for ♂ and ♀, e.g., *She's a good girl. He's a good boy.*



#### very

Use **very** before adjectives, e.g., *It's a very fast car.* **NOT** *It's a fast car very.*



# 5

## 5A simple present: I and you +, -, and ?

2 41 ))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

<div><div>+</div></div>	<div><div>-</div></div>	
<div><div>I live downtown.</div><div>You live near here.</div></div>	<div><div>I don't live downtown.</div><div>You don't live near here.</div></div>	
<div><div>?</div></div>	<div><div>✓</div></div>	<div><div>✗</div></div>
<div><div>Do you live near here?</div></div>	<div><div>Yes, I do.</div></div>	<div><div>No, I don't.</div></div>



**do**

In simple present ? and ✓ do is an auxiliary verb, not a normal verb.  
**Do you live near here? Yes, I do.**

In simple present - and ✗, don't = do not, and do is an auxiliary verb.  
**I don't want a magazine.**

**Do you drink coffee? No, I don't.**

Do can also be a normal verb.

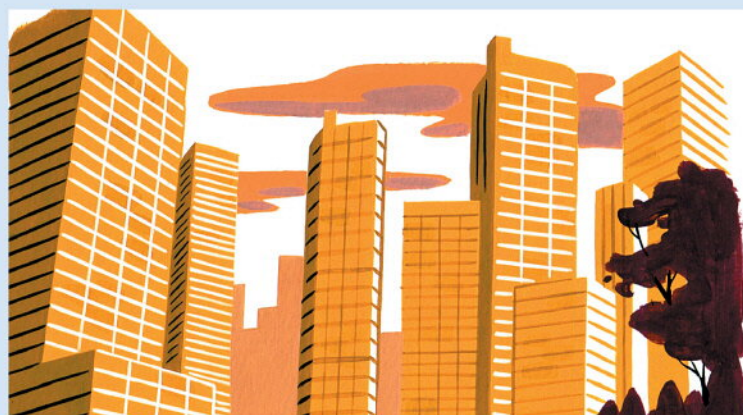
**I do my homework on Sunday.**

**Do you do housework on the weekend?**

**Imperatives**

+ imperative = Wait! Stand up. Listen, etc.

- imperative = Don't + verb, e.g., Don't worry. Don't be late, etc.



*I live downtown.*

- Use simple present to talk about habits and general truths, e.g., *I drink coffee. I live in Chicago.*
- Simple present + is the same for I and you.
- Simple present - for I / you = don't + verb, e.g., *I don't have children. NOT I not have children, I no have children.*
- don't = do not
- Simple present ? = Do + I / you + verb, e.g., **Do you live near here? NOT Live you near here? Do you live near here? Yes, I do. NOT Yes, I live.**

## 5B simple present: we, you, they +, -, and ?; Wh- questions

simple present: we, you, they

2 49 ))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

<div><div>+</div></div>	<div><div>-</div></div>	
<div><div><div><b>We have</b> coffee for breakfast.</div><div><b>You have</b> salad for lunch.</div><div><b>They have</b> fish for dinner.</div></div></div>	<div><div><div><b>We don't have</b> tea for breakfast.</div><div><b>You don't have</b> fast food.</div><div><b>They don't have</b> burritos.</div></div></div>	
<div><div>?</div></div>	<div><div>✓</div></div>	<div><div>✗</div></div>
<div><div><div><b>Do you have</b> salad for lunch?</div><div><b>Do they have</b> rice for dinner?</div></div></div>	<div><div><div>Yes, <b>we do</b>.</div><div>Yes, <b>they do</b>.</div></div></div>	<div><div><div>No, <b>we don't</b>.</div><div>No, <b>they don't</b>.</div></div></div>

simple present Wh- questions

2 50 ))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

Question	Auxiliary	Subject	Verb	
<b>What</b>	<b>do</b>	<b>you</b>	<b>have</b> for breakfast?	Coffee and toast.
<b>When</b>	<b>do</b>	<b>they</b>	<b>have</b> breakfast?	At 8:00.
<b>Where</b>	<b>do</b>	<b>they</b>	<b>have</b> breakfast?	In a cafe.
<b>Who</b>	<b>do</b>	<b>you</b>	<b>have</b> breakfast with?	Our children.
<b>How</b>	<b>do</b>	<b>they</b>	<b>go</b> to work?	By bus.

- Simple present +, -, and ? is the same for I, you, we, you (plural), and they.

- Simple present Wh- questions ask for information. They don't take yes or no answers.
- Common question words are who, what, where, when, why, and how.



**Word order in questions**

+ You have breakfast.  
yes / no ? **Do you have breakfast?**  
Wh- ? **Where do you have breakfast?**

Add a question word to the beginning of a yes / no question to make a Wh- question.

## 5A

a Complete with *do* or *don't*.

I don't live here. I live downtown.

1 A \_\_\_\_\_ you have children?

B No, I \_\_\_\_\_.

2 I \_\_\_\_\_ like this photo. It's terrible.

3 A \_\_\_\_\_ you want a magazine?

B No, thanks. I \_\_\_\_\_ read magazines.

4 I \_\_\_\_\_ have brothers and sisters. I'm an only child.

5 I listen to classical music, but I \_\_\_\_\_ listen to pop music. I \_\_\_\_\_ like pop music.

6 A Excuse me, \_\_\_\_\_ you work here?

B No, I \_\_\_\_\_. Sorry.

7 A \_\_\_\_\_ you like MTV?

B No, I \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ watch TV. I read books.

8 A \_\_\_\_\_ you have a lot of homework?

B Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ homework every night.

9 A \_\_\_\_\_ you want coffee or soda?

B I \_\_\_\_\_ know. Maybe soda.

10 A \_\_\_\_\_ you like Saturdays?

B Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. I watch TV and read books on Saturdays. I \_\_\_\_\_ do housework, but I \_\_\_\_\_ homework.

b Order the words to make sentences or questions.

umbrella have do you an?

*Do you have an umbrella?*

1 know don't I.

2 here you near do live?

3 like I soccer don't.

4 magazine want you a do?

5 a house I small live in.

6 sisters two have I.

7 near here don't live you.

8 don't big want a I car.

9 English you do study?

10 a don't I watch have.

11 homework I do on Saturday don't.

◀ p.28

## 5B

a Write sentences or questions.

have coffee after dinner \_

(**They** ☐)

*They have coffee after dinner.*

1 want coffee or tea (**you** ☐)

2 have dinner at home (**we** ☐)

3 have salad for lunch (**They** ☐)

4 like chocolate (**you** ☐)

5 have fish for breakfast (**Americans** ☐)

6 have salad for lunch (**They** ☐)

7 drink coffee in the evening (**you** ☐)

8 eat a lot of rice in Japan (**we** ☐)

9 have eggs at home (**we** ☐)

10 like Mexican food (**We** ☐)

11 drink tea for breakfast (**Korean people** ☐)

12 have lunch at school (**your friends** ☐)

b Complete the questions. Use the verbs in the responses.

A *Where* do you \_\_\_\_\_ lunch?

B I eat at a cafe near school.

1 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast?

B We have breakfast at 7:30.

2 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you \_\_\_\_\_ for lunch?

B I have a sandwich and a soda.

3 A \_\_\_\_\_ people in your country \_\_\_\_\_ a big lunch?

B Yes, they eat a very big lunch.

4 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you \_\_\_\_\_ lunch with?

B I have lunch with my friends from work.

5 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you \_\_\_\_\_ for a good dinner?

B We go to a French restaurant downtown.

6 A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ food from other countries?

B Yes, we like Thai food and Italian food.

7 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you \_\_\_\_\_ to school?

B I go to school at 8:00.

8 A \_\_\_\_\_ food do we \_\_\_\_\_ at home?

B We have eggs, potatoes, and fish.

9 A \_\_\_\_\_ they \_\_\_\_\_ fish?

B No, they don't like fish.

10 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you \_\_\_\_\_ dinner?

B We eat dinner at home.

◀ p.31

# 6

## 6A simple present: *he, she, it*

2 66 ))) Listen and repeat the **examples**. Then read the rules.

+	-	?	✓	✗	Wh- ?
I work.	I don't work.	Do I work?	Yes, I do.	No, I don't.	What do I do?
You work.	You don't work.	Do you work?	Yes, you do.	No, you don't.	What do you do?
<b>He works.</b>	<b>He doesn't work.</b>	<b>Does he work?</b>	<b>Yes, he does.</b>	<b>No, he doesn't.</b>	<b>What does he do?</b>
<b>She works.</b>	<b>She doesn't work.</b>	<b>Does she work?</b>	<b>Yes, she does.</b>	<b>No, she doesn't.</b>	<b>What does she do?</b>
<b>It works.</b>	<b>It doesn't work.</b>	<b>Does it work?</b>	<b>Yes, it does.</b>	<b>No, it doesn't.</b>	<b>What does it do?</b>
We work.	We don't work.	Do we work?	Yes, we do.	No, we don't.	What do we do?
You work.	You don't work.	Do you work?	Yes, you do.	No, you don't.	What do you do?
They work.	They don't work.	Do they work?	Yes, they do.	No, they don't.	What do they do?

- Simple present *he / she / it* + = verb + -s
- Simple present *he / she / it* - = *doesn't* + verb
- Simple present *he / she / it* ? = (Question word +) *Does* + *he / she / it* + verb

### Spelling rules for *he / she / it*

I / you / we / they	He / she / it	Spelling
work live	works lives	add -s
watch finish	watches finishes	add -es after <i>ch, sh, s, x</i>
study	studies	consonant + <i>y</i> > <i>ies</i>

- The spelling rules for *he / she / it* forms are the same as for plural nouns (see **Grammar Bank 3A p. 96**).

### *Have, go, do*

*Have, go, and do* are irregular in *he / she / it* form.

*I have*    *He / She / It* **has** /hæz/

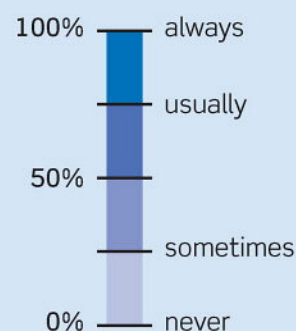
*I do*      *He / She / It* **does** /dʌz/

*I go*      *He / She / It* **goes** /gouz/

## 6B adverbs of frequency

3 7 ))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

- 1 I **always** have breakfast.  
They **usually** finish work at 5:00.  
He **sometimes** watches TV in the evening.
- 2 I am **never** at home on Saturday evening.
- 3 She **never** works on the weekend.



- 1 Adverbs of frequency go before simple present verbs, e.g., *I always have breakfast. I usually get up at 7:00.* **NOT** *I have always breakfast. I get up usually at 7:00.*
- 2 Adverbs of frequency go after *be*, e.g., *Jack is always late.* **NOT** *Jack always is late.*
- 3 With *never*, use a + verb: *He never eats meat.* **NOT** *He doesn't never eat meat.*

## 6A

## a Rewrite the sentences.

- |                              |                                    |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| I live in an apartment.      | She <u>lives in an apartment</u> . |
| 1 They read magazines.       | He _____.                          |
| 2 I want a car.              | My sister _____.                   |
| 3 Do you speak English?      | _____ he _____?                    |
| 4 I don't eat fish.          | My brother _____.                  |
| 5 Where do you work?         | _____ your wife _____?             |
| 6 You don't speak Italian.   | Tom _____.                         |
| 7 Do you like cats?          | _____ she _____?                   |
| 8 I have two brothers.       | Andrew _____.                      |
| 9 What do you eat for lunch? | _____ he _____?                    |
| 10 We don't watch TV.        | My mother _____.                   |
| 11 Do they drink coffee?     | _____ your son _____?              |
| 12 We don't like our job.    | Maria _____.                       |

## b Put the verb in (parentheses) in the right form.

- They don't live near here. (not live)
- She \_\_\_\_\_ to KFMY on the radio. (listen)
  - What time \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ to work? (go)
  - My wife \_\_\_\_\_ on the weekend. (not work)
  - Where \_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_? (live)
  - My husband \_\_\_\_\_ cats. (not like)
  - What \_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_ for breakfast? (have)
  - He \_\_\_\_\_ TV on the weekend. (watch)
  - \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ tea or coffee? (want)
  - Where \_\_\_\_\_ your friend \_\_\_\_\_ Japanese? (study)
  - Carlos and Linda \_\_\_\_\_ soda. (not drink)
  - How \_\_\_\_\_ Tom \_\_\_\_\_ to work? (go)
  - Luisa \_\_\_\_\_ brothers or sisters. (not have)

◀ p.34

## 6B

## a Order the words to make sentences.

- drink never coffee after dinner I.  
*I never drink coffee after dinner.*
- bed I never before to 12:00 go.
  - husband dinner my sometimes makes.
  - are happy they always.
  - usually he breakfast has home at.
  - hurry in a is usually she in the morning.
  - always bus go to they by work.
  - a shower take morning the always I in.
  - tired am on Monday I morning sometimes.
  - sometimes sandwiches we lunch for have.
  - closes the restaurant late usually.
  - goes work she never shopping after.
  - at work on Friday are we never evening.

b Complete the sentences in the simple present. Use a verb from the list and the **bold** adverb.

be (x3) do drink eat finish  
 get go have (x2) speak watch

- He never eats meat for lunch. **never**
- Alex \_\_\_\_\_ to the gym in the evening. **sometimes**
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ busy on the weekend. **always**
  - Tom \_\_\_\_\_ dinner after 6:00 p.m. **never**
  - We \_\_\_\_\_ housework on the weekend. **always**
  - Derek and Sheila \_\_\_\_\_ at the gym on Saturday morning. **usually**
  - Spanish people \_\_\_\_\_ lunch at home. **usually**
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ coffee in the evening. **never**
  - My sister \_\_\_\_\_ up early. **always**
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ English at work. **never**
  - We \_\_\_\_\_ TV after dinner. **sometimes**
  - My husband \_\_\_\_\_ work at 7:30 p.m. **usually**
  - Their English teacher \_\_\_\_\_ late. **sometimes**

◀ p.36



# 7

## 7A word order in questions

3 11 ))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

### Questions with *be*

Question	Verb	Subject		
	<b>Are</b>	<b>they</b>	American?	No, they're Canadian.
	<b>Is</b>	<b>this</b>	your coat?	Yes, it is. Thank you!
<b>How old</b>	<b>are</b>	<b>you?</b>		I'm 28.
<b>What time</b>	<b>is</b>	<b>it?</b>		It's about 2:30.

### Questions with *speak, live, etc.*

Question	Auxiliary	Subject	Base form of verb	
	<b>Do</b>	<b>you</b>	<b>speak</b> English?	Yes, I do.
	<b>Does</b>	<b>she</b>	<b>speak</b> Spanish?	No, she doesn't.
<b>Where</b>	<b>do</b>	<b>you</b>	<b>live?</b>	In a city in Argentina.
<b>What</b>	<b>does</b>	<b>your sister</b>	<b>do?</b>	She's a nurse.
<b>What music</b>	<b>do</b>	<b>you</b>	<b>like?</b>	I like Brazilian music.
<b>When</b>	<b>does</b>	<b>Jane</b>	<b>go</b> to the gym?	At 6:00 in the morning.
<b>How</b>	<b>do</b>	<b>you</b>	<b>spell</b> your last name?	S-I-L-V-A.



#### Questions with *do* vs. questions with *be*

Do not use *be* in simple present [?] with *speak, live, etc.*

Do you **like** Spanish food? NOT *Are you like Spanish food?*

Where do they **study** English? NOT *Where are they study English?*

Do not use the auxiliary *do* in questions with *be*.

Where are you from? NOT *Where do you from?*

Are you American? NOT *Do you American?*

#### Word order:

[+] Subject, verb **It's** summer in Peru.

[?] Verb, subject **Is it** summer in Peru?

[?] Question, verb, subject

**When is it** summer in Peru?

#### Word order:

[+] Subject, verb **You go** to the gym.

[?] Auxiliary, subject, base form

**Do you go** to the gym?

[?] Question, auxiliary, subject, base form

**When do you go** to the gym?

#### In simple present [?], *do* / *does* is an auxiliary verb, not a normal verb.

What time **do** you **start** work?

auxiliary verb      normal verb

#### Use *do* for *I, you, we, and they*. Use *does* for *he, she, and it*.

What time **do** **Tim and Liz** get up? NOT

*What time does Tim and Liz get up?*

**Where does** **Jason** work? NOT *Where do Jason work?*

#### Use the base form of the verb for all subjects (*I, you, he, she, it, we, they*).

What music **does** **she** like? NOT *What music does she likes?*

## 7B *can* / *can't* [+], [-], and [?]

3 16 ))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

[+]	[-]
<b>You can</b> park here.	<b>You can't</b> park here.
<b>He can</b> come to dinner tonight.	<b>He can't</b> come to dinner tonight.
<b>We can</b> have lunch outside.	<b>We can't</b> have lunch outside.

[?]	[✓]	[X]	Wh- [?]
<b>Can I</b> park here?	Yes, <b>you can</b> .	No, <b>you can't</b> .	<b>Where can I</b> park?
<b>Can they</b> come to dinner?	Yes, <b>they can</b> .	No, <b>they can't</b> .	<b>When can you</b> come to dinner?



#### Impersonal *you*

Can **you** come to dinner tonight, Mark? (*you* = Mark)

**You** can't swim here. (*you* = people in general)

#### *can't* = cannot

#### Use *can* / *can't* for permission or possibility.

–You **can** park here. = You have permission.

You **can't** park here. = You don't have permission.

–I **can** come to dinner tonight. = It's possible.

I **can't** come to dinner tonight. = It isn't possible.

#### *can* / *can't* is the same for *I, you, he, she, etc.*

She **can** send personal emails at work.

#### Use *can* / *can't* + verb.

You **can** use your phone over there. NOT

*You can to use.*

They **can't** come to dinner. NOT *They can't to come.*

#### Do not use *do* / *does* in [?] with *can*.

Can I park here? NOT *Do can I park here?*

Where can I park? NOT *Where do I can park?*

## 7A

- a Complete the sentences with a question word from the list.

How (x2) What (x2) What time When Where (x2) Who

- A What time do you go to bed?  
 B At about eleven o'clock.
- 1 A \_\_\_\_\_ music does she like?  
 B Jazz music and pop.
- 2 A \_\_\_\_\_ old is your sister?  
 B She's 19.
- 3 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you want for lunch?  
 B A sandwich and a soda, please.
- 4 A \_\_\_\_\_'s that woman with Bob?  
 B It's his sister.
- 5 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you have English classes?  
 B On Thursdays.
- 6 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you spell your last name?  
 B J-O-H-A-N-S-O-N.
- 7 A \_\_\_\_\_ does your wife work?  
 B In an office.
- 8 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you usually go on the weekend?  
 B To the gym, the park, and the stores downtown.

- b Order the words to make questions.

live you do where?

*Where do you live?*

- 1 your where live do brothers?  
 2 your is cell this phone?  
 3 movie the when is?  
 4 Spanish does speak wife your?  
 5 is how family your?  
 6 we late are for class?  
 7 daughter sushi does your like?  
 8 show TV start what does time the?

- c Write questions to complete the dialogue.

A Tell me about your town. <sup>1</sup>*Is it popular with tourists?*

B Yes, it is. It's very popular with tourists. A lot of people come here in the summer.

A <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?

B Tourists do a lot of fun things in the summer. They swim in the lake and walk in the mountains.

A <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?

B In the evening, people go to restaurants and movie theaters. On Thursday the art museum is open late.

A <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?

B It closes at 9:00 p.m. on Thursday.

A <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?

B Yes, tourists come in the winter.

A <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?

B Yes, it's cold in the winter. It always snows. It's a great time to ski.

◀ p.41

## 7B

- a Write sentences with *can* or *can't*.

You / play soccer here ☐

*You can't play soccer here.*

- 1 / we sit here ☐
- 2 You / ski in the summer ☐
- 3 Molly / play soccer with us tomorrow ☐
- 4 / you have lunch with me tomorrow ☐
- 5 You / use my cell phone ☐
- 6 We / park here ☐
- 7 / we watch TV after dinner ☐
- 8 He / go to the movies tonight ☐

- b Complete the sentences with *can* or *can't* and a verb from the list.

come drive hear see swim take (x2) walk use

You can use the Internet in City Cafe.

- 1 I \_\_\_\_\_ to work today. My sister has the car.
- 2 Sorry, I \_\_\_\_\_ you very well. Can you repeat that, please?
- 3 A \_\_\_\_\_ we \_\_\_\_\_ today?  
 B No, the water's very cold.
- 4 The restaurant's near here. We \_\_\_\_\_ there.
- 5 This is hard work! \_\_\_\_\_ we \_\_\_\_\_ a break now?
- 6 A Look at that house. Is it 511 Main Street or 517 Main Street?  
 B I \_\_\_\_\_ the number. I don't have my glasses.
- 7 A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ to dinner at my house on Saturday?  
 B I'm sorry, I can't. It's my mother's birthday.
- 8 A Excuse me. You \_\_\_\_\_ photos in the museum.  
 B Sorry!

◀ p.42

# 8

## 8A present continuous: *be + verb + -ing*

3 33 ))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

present continuous ☐ and ☐

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>I'm working</b> today.	<b>I'm not working</b> today.
<b>You're sitting</b> in my chair.	<b>You aren't sitting</b> in my chair.
<b>He's playing</b> soccer.	<b>He isn't playing</b> soccer.
<b>It's raining.</b>	<b>It isn't raining.</b>
<b>We're having</b> dinner.	<b>We aren't having</b> dinner.
<b>They're listening</b> to the radio.	<b>They aren't listening</b> to the radio.

- Word order:
  - ☐ Subject, *be*, verb + *-ing*  
**You are working** today.
  - ☐ *Be*, subject, verb + *-ing*  
**Are you working** today?
  - ☐ Question, *be*, subject, verb + *-ing*  
**Where are you working** today?
- Use *be + verb + -ing* to talk about things that are happening now / at the moment.  
*Look! It's raining. NOT Look! It rains.*

present continuous ☐, ☒, and ☒

Question	Be	Subject	Verb + -ing	
	<b>Are</b>	<b>you</b>	<b>working</b> today?	Yes, <b>I am</b> . / No, <b>I'm not</b> .
	<b>Is</b>	<b>she</b>	<b>sitting</b> in my chair?	Yes, <b>she is</b> . / No, <b>she isn't</b> .
	<b>Are</b>	<b>they</b>	<b>listening</b> to the radio?	Yes, <b>they are</b> . / No, <b>they aren't</b> .
<b>Where</b>	<b>are</b>	<b>you</b>	<b>sitting?</b>	At a table near the window.
<b>What</b>	<b>is</b>	<b>he</b>	<b>doing?</b>	<b>He's watching</b> TV at home.

Spelling rules: verb + <i>-ing</i>		
Base form	Verb + <i>-ing</i>	Spelling
read study see	reading studying seeing	add <i>-ing</i>
drive have take	driving having taking	<i>e + -ing</i>
swim get	swimming getting	one vowel + one consonant = double consonant + <i>-ing</i>

## 8B present continuous or simple present?

3 40 ))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

- I **work** in an office. Today **I'm working** at home.
- I usually **drink** soda at lunch, but today **I'm drinking** water.
- What **are** you **doing** right now?  
She's **wearing** a nice coat today.

- Simple present = things we usually do and things that are normally true, e.g., *I live in Spain. Pizza is great.*  
Present continuous = things happening now / at the moment, e.g., *I'm eating a sandwich at a restaurant. I'm watching TV now.*
- We often use simple present with *always, usually, sometimes, never*, etc., e.g., *I sometimes have lunch in my office. I never get up early on Saturday.*
- We often use present continuous with *now, right now, and today*, e.g., *I'm talking on the phone right now. I'm wearing a suit today.*

## 8A

a Write sentences in the present continuous.

He / take a shower  
*He's taking a shower.*

- 1 I / read
- 2 You / drive to work
- 3 He / not work
- 4 We / use the Internet
- 5 They / not study
- 6 She / make dinner
- 7 They / play tennis
- 8 You / not watch TV
- 9 I / not read the newspaper
- 10 He / swim



b Complete the sentences with the **bold** verb in the present continuous  $\boxed{+}$ ,  $\boxed{-}$ , or  $\boxed{?}$

She *is eating* pasta. (**eat**)

- 1 A Excuse me! You \_\_\_\_\_ in my seat. (**sit**) B Sorry!
- 2 Dad \_\_\_\_\_ TV. He \_\_\_\_\_. (**not watch, sleep**)
- 3 A What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ in Boston? (**do**)  
 B I'm on vacation. I \_\_\_\_\_ with a friend. (**stay**)
- 4 You can go to the gym with me. You \_\_\_\_\_ today! (**not work**)
- 5 A \_\_\_\_\_ Alice \_\_\_\_\_ her homework? (**do**)  
 B No, she isn't. She \_\_\_\_\_ computer games. (**play**)
- 6 A Do you want my newspaper? I \_\_\_\_\_ it. (**not read**)  
 B No, thanks. I \_\_\_\_\_ a movie on my laptop. (**watch**)
- 7 A Is that your brother? B No, my brother's over there. He \_\_\_\_\_ a red T-shirt. (**wear**)
- 8 A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ a good time in Rio? (**have**)  
 B Yes, I am. The food and music are great!
- 9 A Hello, is Luisa there? B This is Luisa.  
 Who \_\_\_\_\_ I \_\_\_\_\_ to? (**talk**)  
 A It's Yuko, from English class. I \_\_\_\_\_ about today's homework. (**call**)
- 10 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ your brother \_\_\_\_\_ in New York? (**stay**) B At a hotel.

◀ p.46

## 8B

a Circle the correct form.

Ming usually goes / **is going** to work at 6:30, but he **doesn't work** / isn't working today.

- 1 A Are you in your office?  
 B No. It's snowing today, so **I work** / **I'm working** at home.
- 2 A Let's go to Madrid for our vacation.  
 B Great idea. **I love** / **I'm loving** Spanish food.
- 3 A What **do you do** / **are you doing**? Is that a computer game?  
 B No, it isn't. **I work** / **I'm working**.
- 4 Maritza is a nurse. **She works** / **She's working** in a hospital every day.
- 5 We're in France on vacation now. **We stay** / **We're staying** in a cute little hotel.
- 6 A Hi, Mark. **Do you do** / **Are you doing** anything important right now?  
 B Yes, I am. **I talk** / **I'm talking** on the phone.
- 7 Let's go to Mexico in December. It never **rains** / **is raining** there in the winter.
- 8 I usually **have** / **am having** a big lunch, but today **I have** / **I'm having** a small salad.

b Complete the sentences with the **bold** verb. Use simple present or present continuous.

Do you usually take the train to work? (**take**)

- 1 A Look! It \_\_\_\_\_! (**snow**)  
 B Wow. It \_\_\_\_\_ in May. (**usually not snow**)
- 2 A My father and I \_\_\_\_\_ dinner at a Mexican restaurant every Tuesday. (**have**)  
 B Really? \_\_\_\_\_ your father usually \_\_\_\_\_ the bill? (**pay**)
- 3 A That's my friend, Ming. He \_\_\_\_\_ a T-shirt and a blue hat. (**wear**)  
 B I \_\_\_\_\_ him. What \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_? (**not see, do**)  
 A He \_\_\_\_\_ to the teacher. (**talk**)
- 4 A Hi, Kayla. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the soccer game on TV now? (**watch**)  
 B No. I never \_\_\_\_\_ sports. (**watch**)
- 5 A What time \_\_\_\_\_ you usually \_\_\_\_\_ lunch? (**eat**)  
 B 1:00 or 1:30, usually.
- 6 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ Yuka and Toshi today? (**be**)  
 B On vacation in the mountains. They \_\_\_\_\_ right now. (**ski**)

◀ p.48

# 9

## 9A *there is / there are*

3 47 ))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

Singular	Plural
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>There's</b> a TV. <b>There's</b> a lamp.	<b>There are</b> two beds. <b>There are some</b> books.
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>There isn't</b> a phone. <b>There isn't</b> a bathroom.	<b>There aren't any</b> towels. <b>There aren't any</b> windows.
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Is there</b> a swimming pool? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes, <b>there is</b> . <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No, <b>there isn't</b> .	<b>Are there any</b> chairs? Yes, <b>there are</b> . No, <b>there aren't</b> .

- *There's a TV in my hotel room.* = the room has a TV
- *there's = there is*
- Use *there is* for singular nouns and *there are* for plural nouns.
- Word order:  
☐ **There is** a swimming pool.  
☐ **Is there** a swimming pool?
- Don't contract *there is* in short answers, e.g., *Yes, there is.* **NOT** *Yes, there's.*



### Some and any

#### some

☐ **There are some** towels in the bathroom.

#### any

☐ **There aren't any** towels in the bathroom.

☐ **Are there any** towels in the bathroom?

- Use *some* and *any* + plural nouns.
- *Some* = you don't say how many

## 9B simple past: *be*

3 51 ))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

simple past: *be* ☐ and ☐

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>I was</b> a teacher. <b>You were</b> at work last night. <b>She was</b> at school yesterday. <b>It was</b> cold last week. <b>We were</b> at the gym. <b>You were</b> late. <b>They were</b> in London.	<b>I wasn't</b> a teacher. <b>You weren't</b> at work last night. <b>He wasn't</b> at home yesterday. <b>It wasn't</b> cold last week. <b>We weren't</b> at the gym. <b>You weren't</b> late. <b>They weren't</b> in London.

- Use *was / were* to talk about the past.
- Present to past: *am / is > was*, *are > were*  
*He is at home today. > He was at home yesterday.*
- *wasn't = was not*; *weren't = were not*

simple past: *be* ☐, ☒ and ☐

Question	Verb	Subject	
	<b>Were</b>	<b>you</b> late?	Yes, <b>I was</b> . / No, <b>I wasn't</b> .
	<b>Was</b>	<b>she</b> a waitress?	Yes, <b>she was</b> . / No, <b>she wasn't</b> .
<b>Where</b>	<b>were</b>	<b>you</b> yesterday?	I was at the beach.
<b>When</b>	<b>was</b>	<b>he</b> at the gym?	About 3:30 yesterday.



### Simple past time expressions

You can use the simple past with these time expressions: *this morning*, *yesterday*, *last night*, *last week*, *last month*, *last year*.  
*He was at the gym this morning.*  
*She wasn't at school last week.*

- Word order:  
☐ Subject, verb  
**You were** in China.  
☐ Verb, subject  
**Were you** in China?  
☐ Question, verb, subject  
**When were you** in China?

## 9A

a Complete with *a, some, or any*.

Are there any elevators?

- 1 There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ cars in the parking lot.
- 2 Are there \_\_\_\_\_ cheap hotels in this city?
- 3 There are \_\_\_\_\_ pillows on the bed.
- 4 There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ towels in the bathroom.
- 5 There's \_\_\_\_\_ hot tub in the spa.
- 6 Are there \_\_\_\_\_ chairs in the room?
- 7 There are \_\_\_\_\_ T-shirts and hats in the gift shop.
- 8 Is there \_\_\_\_\_ TV in the restaurant?
- 9 There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ table in the room.
- 10 There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ windows in my room.
- 11 There are \_\_\_\_\_ stores in the hotel.
- 12 Is there \_\_\_\_\_ gym in the hotel?

b Complete with the right form of *there is* or *there are*.

There aren't any chairs in the room.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ any free tables in the restaurant?
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ any elevators in the hotel.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ a bathtub in the bathroom. It's very big.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ a remote control on the table.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ any books in the room?
- 6 We can't swim. \_\_\_\_\_ a swimming pool in the hotel.
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ any pictures in the room.
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ any people in the gym?
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ a meeting room in the hotel?
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ some towels on the floor.
- 11 We can't park here. \_\_\_\_\_ a parking lot.
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_ any people at reception?

◀ p.52

## 9B

a Order the words to make questions and statements.

you at home night were last?

*Were you at home last night?*

- 1 last in school were week they?
- 2 a year I student last wasn't.
- 3 you where week were last?
- 4 in Australia month last were we.
- 5 teacher morning this our late was?
- 6 yesterday was time Alice here what?

b Write sentences with *was* and *were*.

We / at home last night ☐

*We weren't at home last night.*

- 1 / you at work last week ☐
- 2 Diego / at school ☐
- 3 We / at school at 4:00 ☐
- 4 / they in the meeting yesterday ☐
- 5 Maria / busy yesterday ☐
- 6 It / a very good book. ☐
- 7 / your brother in Spain last month ☐
- 8 I / at the gym this morning. ☐



c Complete the dialogues with *was*, *wasn't*, *were*, or *weren't*.

1 A Where <sup>1</sup> were you last night?

B I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at work all evening.

A No, you <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. You <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at the movie theater!

B No, I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

2 A <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you and your friends at school last week?

B No, we <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. We <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ on vacation.

3 A <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Mariah Carey a teacher?

B No, she <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. She <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a waitress.

4 A When <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Emma and Tony in London?

B They <sup>13</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ there last month.

A Really? I <sup>14</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ there last month, too!

5 A <sup>15</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the movie good?

B No, it <sup>16</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. It <sup>17</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ very slow!

6 A <sup>18</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you in Boston yesterday?

B No, we <sup>19</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. We <sup>20</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in New York.

◀ p.54

# 10

## 10A simple past: regular verbs

4 3))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

+	-
<b>I arrived</b> early. <b>You learned</b> Spanish. <b>She liked</b> the movie. <b>It rained</b> yesterday. <b>We talked</b> to the teacher. <b>You worked</b> late. <b>They walked</b> to a cafe.	<b>I didn't arrive</b> early. <b>You didn't learn</b> Spanish. <b>She didn't like</b> the movie. <b>It didn't rain</b> yesterday. <b>We didn't talk</b> to the teacher. <b>You didn't work</b> late. <b>They didn't walk</b> to a cafe.

- Use the simple past for finished actions.
- The simple past is the same for all persons, e.g., *I arrived. You arrived. They arrived.*
- *didn't* = *did not*
- Word order:
  - ☒ Subject, verb + -ed **You played** soccer.
  - ☐ Subject, auxiliary, base form  
**I didn't play** soccer. NOT *I didn't played.*
  - ☒ Auxiliary, subject, base form  
**Did you play** soccer? NOT *Did you played.*
  - ☒ Question, auxiliary, subject, base form  
**When did you play** soccer? NOT *When did you played?*

Question	Auxiliary	Subject	Base form of verb		
	<b>Did</b>	<b>you</b>	<b>visit</b> the museum?	Yes, <b>I did.</b>	No, <b>I didn't.</b>
	<b>Did</b>	<b>he</b>	<b>cook</b> dinner?	Yes, <b>he did.</b>	No, <b>he didn't.</b>
	<b>Did</b>	<b>they</b>	<b>study</b> French?	Yes, <b>they did.</b>	No, <b>they didn't.</b>
<b>Where</b>	<b>did</b>	<b>you</b>	<b>live?</b>	Near the university.	
<b>What</b>	<b>did</b>	<b>she</b>	<b>study?</b>	History and economics.	
<b>How</b>	<b>did</b>	<b>you</b>	<b>travel</b> to school?	By bicycle.	

Spelling rules: regular simple past verbs		
Base form	Past	Spelling
walk rain start	walked rained started	add -ed
arrive change move	arrived changed moved	add -d
cry try	cried tried	consonant + y > ied
prefer stop	preferred stopped	one vowel + one consonant = double consonant + ed

## 10B simple past: do, get, go, have

4 11))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

<div><div>+</div></div>	<div><div>-</div></div>
<p><b>I did</b> housework on Sunday. <b>You got up</b> late yesterday. <b>He went</b> to school by bus. <b>We had</b> breakfast at home.</p>	<p><b>I didn't do</b> housework on Sunday. <b>You didn't get up</b> late yesterday. <b>He didn't go to</b> school by bus. <b>We didn't have</b> breakfast at home.</p>

<div><div>?</div></div>	<div><div>✓</div></div>	<div><div>✗</div></div>
<p><b>Did you do</b> homework last night? <b>Did you get</b> my email? <b>Did she go</b> to school yesterday? <b>Did they have</b> dinner?</p>	<p>Yes, <b>I did</b>. Yes, <b>I did</b>. Yes, <b>she did</b>. Yes, <b>they did</b>.</p>	<p>No, <b>I didn't</b>. No, <b>I didn't</b>. No, <b>she didn't</b>. No, <b>they didn't</b>.</p>

<div><div>?</div></div>	
<p><b>When did you do</b> housework? <b>Where did you get</b> your shirt? <b>Who did you go</b> to the movie with? <b>What did you have</b> for breakfast?</p>	<p>On the weekend. At a store near school. My sister and her friend. Coffee and toast.</p>

- *do, have, go, and get* are **irregular** in the simple past. Irregular simple past verbs do not end in -ed.  
He **went** to school by bus. NOT *He goed to school by bus.*
- Present to past:  
*I do > I did    I go > I went*  
*I get > I got    I have > I had*
- Use the base form in ☐ and ☒.
- Use *did* and *didn't* in short answers.  
*Did you go to work?* Yes, *I did.* NOT *Yes, I went.*  
*Did you have breakfast?* No, *I didn't.* NOT *No, I didn't have.*



### did and didn't

In simple past ☒ and ☒ *did* is an auxiliary verb, not a normal verb.

**Did you go to the gym?** Yes, **I did.**

In simple past ☐ and ☒, *didn't* = *did not*, and *did* is an auxiliary verb.

**I didn't have breakfast.**

**Did you have breakfast?** No, **I didn't.**

*Did* can also be a normal verb.

**I did housework on the weekend.**

## 10A

a Write the sentences in the simple past.

He listens to pop music.

*He listened to pop music.*

- 1 They work in a hospital. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I finish work late. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 He likes the movie. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 You live in Vietnam. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I study Spanish. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 She walks to work. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 He prefers the red car. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 They play tennis. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 You talk a lot! \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 The train stops in Shanghai. \_\_\_\_\_
- 11 We exercise in the morning. \_\_\_\_\_
- 12 She changes money at a bank near here. \_\_\_\_\_

b Complete the dialogues with the **bold** verb in the simple past ⊕, ⊖, or ⊗.

A Did you play golf last weekend? (**play**)

B Yes, I played on Saturday.

1 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the car? (**park**)

B I \_\_\_\_\_ it near the restaurant.

2 A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ your homework? (**finish**)

B No, I \_\_\_\_\_. It was very late.

3 A What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ last year? (**study**)

B I \_\_\_\_\_ English, math, science, and more.

4 A When \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ in Japan? (**arrive**)

B We \_\_\_\_\_ very late, around 1:00 in the morning.

5 A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ in the movie? (**cry**)

B No, I \_\_\_\_\_. But my husband \_\_\_\_\_ a lot!

6 A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the meal? (**like**)

B No, I \_\_\_\_\_ it very much. The salad was terrible.

7 A What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ on TV last night? (**watch**)

B I \_\_\_\_\_ TV last night. I listened to music and studied.

8 A \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ last night? (**rain**)

B No. It \_\_\_\_\_, but it was very cold and cloudy.

◀ p.58

## 10B

a Write the sentences in the simple past with *yesterday*.

I don't go the gym. *I didn't go to the gym yesterday.*

- 1 You have salad for lunch. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Does she go to the beach? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I don't have breakfast. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Mika doesn't do housework. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 We go to school at 7:30. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 What time do they finish work? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Do you do housework after dinner? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 You don't go to work by car. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 I get up late. \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 What does Pedro have for breakfast? \_\_\_\_\_
- 11 Does she get up early? \_\_\_\_\_
- 12 What time do you do homework? \_\_\_\_\_

b Look at the **bold** words. Are they auxiliary verbs?

Circle the auxiliary verbs.

I **didn't** do my homework last night.

1 A **Did** you go to the movies yesterday?

B No, I **didn't**. I did housework all day.

2 What **did** you **do** on Friday evening?

3 A What time **did** you finish the homework?

B Homework? Oh, no! I **didn't do it**! **Did** you **do it**?

A Yes, I **did**. And I **didn't** enjoy it!

c Complete the sentences with the **bold** verb in the simple past ⊕, ⊖, or ⊗.

A Did you go to bed early last night? (**go**)

B Yes, I did. I went to bed at 9:30!

1 A What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ for lunch today? (**have**)

B I \_\_\_\_\_ fish. What's for dinner?

2 Carla was on vacation. She \_\_\_\_\_ homework and she \_\_\_\_\_ housework. (**not do**)

3 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ last night? (**go**)

B We \_\_\_\_\_ to an expensive restaurant.

4 A What time \_\_\_\_\_ your brothers \_\_\_\_\_? (**get up**)

B Late! They \_\_\_\_\_ at 11:00.

5 I'm very hungry. I \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast this morning. (**not have**)

6 Mei-ling \_\_\_\_\_ to English class all week. Is she OK? (**not go**)


◀ p.60

# 11

## 11A object pronouns

4 16))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

Subject pronouns	Object pronouns
I'm your teacher.	Everyone, please listen to <b>me</b> .
<b>You</b> 're my mother.	I love <b>you</b> .
<b>He</b> was at the gym.	I talked to <b>him</b> .
<b>She</b> never listens.	Don't talk to <b>her</b> .
<b>It</b> 's a great movie.	I watched <b>it</b> last night.
<b>We</b> are movie stars.	Everyone loves <b>us</b> .
<b>They</b> 're good books.	Why don't you read <b>them</b> ?

 **really**  
Use the adverb *really* before *like*, *love*, and *hate* to make the meaning stronger.

*I like American music.* 😊  
*I **really** like American music.* 😊 😊  
*I hate Mondays.* 😞  
*I **really** hate Mondays.* 😞 😞

- Use subject pronouns (*I, you, he*, etc.) as the subject of a verb. The subject does the action.  
*Lisa is a teacher. **She** works in a school.*
- Use object pronouns (*me, him*, etc.) as the object of a verb. The object receives the action.  
*Lisa is my friend. I see **her** every day.*
- We also use object pronouns after prepositions.  
*You never listen to **me**. NOT ~~You never listen to I.~~*  
*The teacher talked to **us**. NOT ~~The teacher talked to we.~~*

## 11B simple past: more irregular verbs

4 26))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

base form	past +	past -
buy	bought	didn't buy
drive	drove	didn't drive
find	found	didn't find
give	gave	didn't give
leave	left	didn't leave
say	said	didn't say
see	saw	didn't see
send	sent	didn't send
sit	sat	didn't sit
tell	told	didn't tell
think	thought	didn't think

- Remember that irregular simple past verbs do not end in *-ed*.
- Use the irregular past form only in **+** sentences. *I **bought** a car last year.*
- For **-** and **?** use the base form.  
*I **didn't** buy a car last year. NOT ~~I didn't bought a car last year.~~*  
*Did you buy a car last year? NOT ~~Did you bought a car last year?~~*
- Remember that *be, do, get, go*, and *have* are also irregular verbs. There is a list of irregular verbs on page 131.

## 11A

a Change the **highlighted** words to one pronoun.

I really like **Lady Gaga**.

I really like her.

- 1 I never listen to **The Black Eyed Peas**.
- 2 We're lost! Can you help **my friend and me**?
- 3 I listen to **Enrique Iglesias** every day at the gym.
- 4 Can you find **your keys**?
- 5 He listened to **Adele's new song** at a party.
- 6 I like **Justin Timberlake** in that movie.
- 7 Do you like **Placido Domingo**?
- 8 Can you ask **your sister** about the concert?
- 9 Wait for **Jane and me**!
- 10 What is Shakira's last name? I don't know **her last name**.
- 11 Did you talk to **Tom** about his U2 T-shirt?
- 12 Do you like **hip hop music**?
- 13 **A** Do you like the Black Eyed Peas?  
**B** Who are they? I don't know **the Black Eyed Peas**.
- 14 My favorite singer is Katy Perry. I really like **Katy Perry**.

b Complete the sentences with an object pronoun.

She's a great singer. I really like her.

- 1 I bought an MP3 player, but I left \_\_\_\_\_ in the store.
- 2 Jim likes Sarah, but she doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 My children love music. I sing to \_\_\_\_\_ every night.
- 4 Where's Emma? I called \_\_\_\_\_, but she didn't answer.
- 5 People speak very fast in hip-hop songs. I can't understand \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 I'm hungry. Can you make \_\_\_\_\_ a sandwich, please?
- 7 We saw them at the concert, but they didn't see \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 I don't have my car today. Can I go to the concert with \_\_\_\_\_?

c Order the words to make sentences.

hates Steve really the Beatles.

*Steve really hates the Beatles.*

- 1 really friends Beyoncé love my.
- 2 pop Tom hates music really.
- 3 in really England like Radiohead people.
- 4 sister classical my hate I and really music.

◀ p.64

## 11B

a Change the sentences to the simple past.

I send a lot of emails every day.

**(last week)** I sent a lot of emails last week.

- 1 Jane leaves the house at 7:00 every morning.  
**(yesterday)** \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I give you money for lunch every day.  
**(this morning)** \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 We see our friends on Saturdays.  
**(last Saturday)** \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 He drives to work every day.  
**(last week)** \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I say "hello" to her every day.  
**(yesterday)** \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 He tells his children a story every night.  
**(last night)** \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Mark sits next to Lisa every day.  
**(yesterday)** \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 They buy a new car every year.  
**(last year)** \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 I think about you every day.  
**(last night)** \_\_\_\_\_

b Complete the story with the **bold** verb in the simple past **+**, **-**, or **?**.

I <sup>1</sup> didn't drive (**not drive**) to work yesterday because my car was broken. In the morning, I was on the bus and the weather was terrible—rain, rain, and more rain. I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (**see**) a nice red umbrella on the seat next to me. No one was in the seat. "How nice!"

I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (**think**) "A free umbrella! And I need one!"

After work, a woman <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (**sit**) next to me on the bus. Her hair and clothes were wet from the rain. I

<sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (**give**) her the red umbrella. "Here," I <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (**say**) "Take my umbrella."

She was surprised. "Your umbrella? Did you <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (**buy**) this?"

"No, I <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (**not buy**) it. I <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (**find**) it."

"Really? Where <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ it?" (**find**)

"Here on the bus," I <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (**tell**) her. "Around 8:30 this morning."

"That's *my* umbrella! I <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (**leave**) it here this morning."

In the evening, she <sup>13</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (**send**) me a very nice email. "Thank you very much," it <sup>14</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (**say**)

◀ p.67

# 12

## 12A future: *be going to*

4 40))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.


+	-
<b>I'm going to</b> come to class on Friday.	<b>I'm not going to</b> come to class on Friday.
<b>You're going to</b> go to Miami this weekend.	<b>You aren't going to</b> go to Miami this weekend.
<b>He's going to</b> buy a new car.	<b>He isn't going to</b> buy a new car.
<b>We're going to</b> camp.	<b>We aren't going to</b> camp.
<b>They're going to</b> stay with us.	<b>They aren't going to</b> stay with us.

- Use *be + going to + base form of verb* to talk about future plans.
- You can use future time expressions with *be going to*, e.g., *tonight, tomorrow, next week*, etc.
- Word order:
  - ⊕ Subject, *be, going to*, base form  
**I'm going to buy** a new car.
  - ? *Be, subject, going to*, base form  
**Are you going to buy** a new car?
  - ? Question, *be, subject, going to*, base form  
**When are you going to buy** a new car?

Question	Be	Subject	Going to	Base form of verb		
	Are	you	going to	travel?	Yes, <b>I am</b> .	No, <b>I'm not</b> .
	Is	she	going to	see them?	Yes, <b>she is</b> .	No, <b>she isn't</b> .
What	are	you	going to	do?	I'm going to drive from Alaska to Argentina.	
Where	are	they	going to	stay?	They're going to camp.	

## 12B review of present, past, and future

4 46))) Listen and repeat. Then read the rules.

Present forms	Past forms	Future forms
<u>simple present: <i>be</i></u> You <b>re</b> in room 4. You <b>aren't</b> in room 4. <b>Are</b> you in room 4? <b>Where are</b> you?  <u>simple present: other verbs</u> She <b>works</b> in an office. She <b>doesn't work</b> in an office. <b>Does</b> she <b>work</b> in an office? <b>Where does</b> she <b>work</b> ?  <u>can / can't</u> You <b>can</b> park here. You <b>can't</b> park here. <b>Can</b> I park here? <b>Where can</b> I park?  <u>present continuous</u> He's <b>watching</b> a movie now. He <b>isn't watching</b> a movie. <b>Is</b> he <b>watching</b> a movie? <b>Where is</b> he <b>watching</b> a movie?	<u>simple past: <i>be</i></u> I <b>was</b> at school yesterday. I <b>wasn't</b> at school yesterday. <b>Were</b> you at school yesterday? <b>When were</b> you at school yesterday?  <u>simple past: regular verbs</u> We <b>arrived</b> in Vietnam on Friday. We <b>didn't arrive</b> in Vietnam on Friday. <b>Did</b> you <b>arrive</b> in Vietnam on Friday? <b>When did</b> you <b>arrive</b> in Vietnam?  <u>simple past: irregular verbs</u> She <b>went</b> to the movies. She <b>didn't go</b> to the movies. <b>Did</b> she <b>go</b> to the movies? <b>When did</b> she <b>go</b> to the movies?	<u>future: <i>be going to</i></u> They <b>re going to visit</b> Argentina next year. They <b>aren't going to visit</b> Argentina next year. <b>Are</b> they <b>going to visit</b> Argentina next year? <b>When are</b> they <b>going to visit</b> Argentina?  

- Use simple present to talk about things we usually do and things that are normally true, e.g., *I am a nurse. I live in Vancouver, Canada.*
- Use simple present with frequency adverbs, e.g., *never, sometimes, usually, always.*
- Use *can / can't* to talk about permission or possibility.  
*You can't park here. Can you come to dinner tomorrow night?*
- Use present continuous to talk about things happening now / at the moment, e.g., *I'm talking to my friend on the phone.*
- Use past forms to talk about finished actions.
- The simple past with *be*, regular verbs, and irregular verbs have the same meaning and use. They all describe finished actions. The only difference is the way the spelling of the verbs change.
- You can use past time expressions with the simple past, e.g., *yesterday, last night, last week, last month, last year.*
- Use *be going to* to talk about future plans.
- You can use future time expressions with *be going to*, e.g., *tonight, tomorrow, next week*, etc.

## 12A

a Write sentences with the right form of *be going to*.

/ he / come tonight [?]

*Is he going to come tonight?*

- 1 They / take the bus to Boston [ + ]
- 2 She / go to college [ - ]
- 3 Where / we / go on vacation [ ? ]
- 4 / you / go out for dinner [ ? ]
- 5 She / make eggs for breakfast [ + ]
- 6 / he / pay you the money [ ? ]
- 7 When / she / visit her mother [ ? ]
- 8 I / study this evening [ - ]
- 9 / you / meet us at the airport [ ? ]
- 10 How / you / pay for the meal [ ? ]
- 11 / your brother / be on vacation next week [ - ]
- 12 We / get married next year [ + ]

b Complete with (*be*) going to and a verb from the list.

buy (x2) do give go (x2) not have meet see  
send not stay wear not wear

*I'm going to give* her a book for her birthday.

- 1 We \_\_\_\_\_ a new car next month.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ him an email?
- 3 I don't have work tomorrow, so I \_\_\_\_\_ a suit.
- 4 A What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ tonight? B I'm going to see a movie. A What movie \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?  
B The new Brad Pitt movie.
- 5 They \_\_\_\_\_ a vacation this year.
- 6 We \_\_\_\_\_ in that hotel. It's very expensive!
- 7 I'm tired. I \_\_\_\_\_ to bed early this evening.
- 8 A \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ the red car or the blue car?  
B The blue car. It's old, but it's cheap.
- 9 It's cold outside. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ a coat?
- 10 A What time \_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_ to the airport?  
B Very early, at 5:30 in the morning.
- 11 He \_\_\_\_\_ us outside the theater at 7:00.

◀ p.70

## 12B

a Write sentences in the simple past, simple present, present continuous, and future with *be going to*.

/ you see the movie? (**past**)

*Did you see the movie?*

- 1 He / not be American. (**present**)
- 2 Where / we / have dinner? (**future**)
- 3 When / you visit Mexico? (**past**)
- 4 I / buy a new suit for work. (**past**)
- 5 A I can't find Tom. What / he / wear?  
(**present continuous**)  
B A blue suit and a hat.
- 6 / I late? (**present**)
- 7 You / not do homework tonight. (**future**)
- 8 / we have any eggs? (**present**)
- 9 He / not drive to work. (**past**)
- 10 It / rain right now. (**present continuous**)
- 11 / your friend / work in Paris? (**future**)
- 12 A / you like the movie? (**past**)  
B No. It was terrible.

b Complete the questions and answers with one word.

A Were you at school last week? B No. I was sick.

- 1 A \_\_\_\_\_ you come to dinner tonight?  
B Sorry, I \_\_\_\_\_. I have plans.
- 2 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ you go on vacation?  
B We visited Korea and Japan.
- 3 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ Kim and Jessica last night? B At the gym.
- 4 A \_\_\_\_\_ Mark's wife speak Japanese?  
B No, she doesn't. She speaks Chinese.
- 5 A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ to have a party next week?  
B Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. Can you come?
- 6 A \_\_\_\_\_ you see the newspaper today?  
B Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. The news was terrible.
- 7 A \_\_\_\_\_ Maria in your class?  
B No, she \_\_\_\_\_. She's in Luisa's class.
- 8 A Excuse me. Where \_\_\_\_\_ I change money?  
B You \_\_\_\_\_ change money at the bank on Third Street.
- 9 A Who \_\_\_\_\_ Andrew \_\_\_\_\_ to play tennis with tomorrow?  
B His friend Mario.
- 10 A When \_\_\_\_\_ Amy in Rio? B Last year, in February.
- 11 A How \_\_\_\_\_ they usually go to work? B They go by bus.
- 12 A What \_\_\_\_\_ you listening to? B The new Beyoncé song.
- 13 A \_\_\_\_\_ she working right now?  
B Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_. She's in a meeting.
- 14 A \_\_\_\_\_ Erica at the gym yesterday? B Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_.

◀ p.72

# Numbers; days of the week

## VOCABULARY BANK

### 1 NUMBERS 0-10

a 1 8))) Listen and repeat the numbers.

- 0 zero /'zi:rou/
- 1 one /wʌn/
- 2 two /tu/
- 3 three /θri/
- 4 four /fɔ:/
- 5 five /faɪv/
- 6 six /sɪks/
- 7 seven /'sevn/
- 8 eight /eɪt/
- 9 nine /naɪn/
- 10 ten /tɛn/

0 = oh /ou/ in room numbers and apartment numbers, e.g. room 207 (two oh seven).

b Cover the words. Say the numbers.

◀ p.5

### 2 NUMBERS 11-100

a 1 56))) Listen and repeat the numbers.

- 11 eleven /'levn/
- 12 twelve /twelv/
- 13 thirteen /θɜ:'tɪn/
- 14 fourteen /fɔ:'tɪn/
- 15 fifteen /fɪf'tɪn/
- 16 sixteen /sɪks'tɪn/
- 17 seventeen /sevn'tɪn/
- 18 eighteen /eɪ'tɪn/
- 19 nineteen /naɪn'tɪn/
- 20 twenty /'twenti/
- 21 twenty-one /'twenti wʌn/
- 22 twenty-two /'twenti tu/
- 30 thirty /'θɜ:ti/
- 33 thirty-three /'θɜ:ti θri/
- 40 forty /'fɔ:ti/
- 50 fifty /'fɪfti/
- 60 sixty /'sɪksti/
- 70 seventy /'sevn'ti/
- 80 eighty /'eɪti/
- 90 ninety /'naɪnti/
- 100 a / one hundred /ə 'hʌndrəd/ wʌn 'hʌndrəd/

30 thirty 13 thirteen  
40 forty 14 fourteen etc.

b Cover the words. Say the numbers.

◀ p.13

### 3 DAYS OF THE WEEK

a 1 13))) Listen and repeat the days of the week.

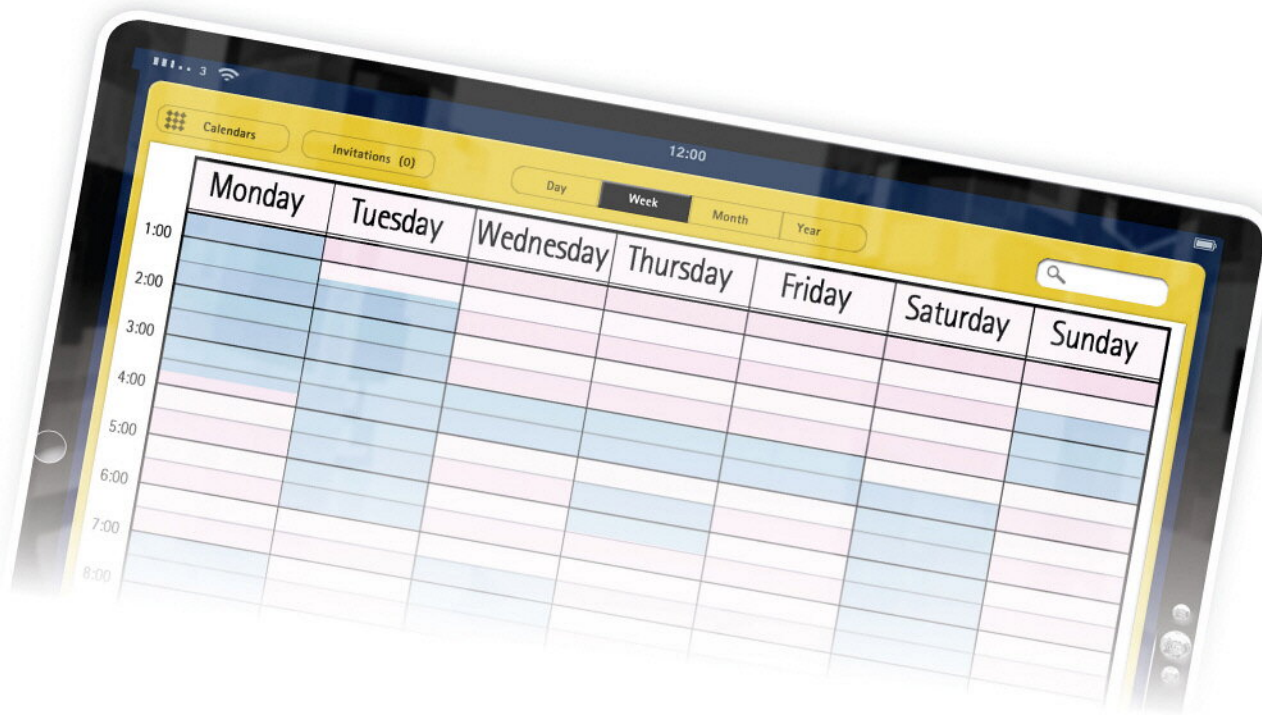
- Monday /'mʌndeɪ/
- Tuesday /'tuzdeɪ/
- Wednesday /'wenzdeɪ/
- Thursday /'θɜ:zdeɪ/
- Friday /'fraɪdeɪ/
- Saturday /'sætədeɪ/
- Sunday /'sʌndeɪ/

Days of the week begin with a CAPITAL letter.  
Monday NOT monday

b Write the correct day.

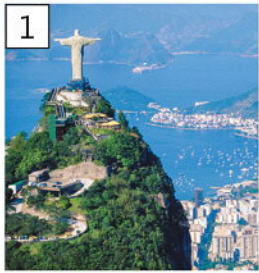
1. today: \_\_\_\_\_
2. tomorrow: \_\_\_\_\_

◀ p.5



### 1 COUNTRIES

a 1 17))) Listen and repeat the countries.



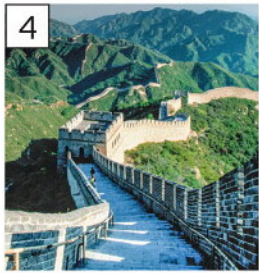
Brazil /brə'zɪl/



Canada /'kænədə/



Chile /'tʃɪli/



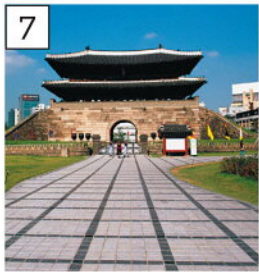
China /'tʃaɪnə/



England /'ɪŋɡlənd/



Japan /dʒə'pæn/



Korea /kə'riə/



Mexico /'meksɪkə/



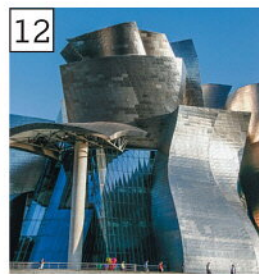
Peru /pə'ru/



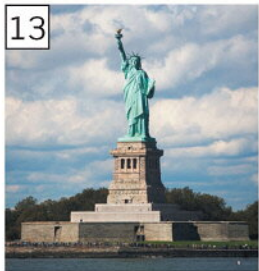
Portugal /'pɔːtʃəɡəl/



Saudi Arabia  
/'saʊdi ə'reɪbiə/



Spain /speɪn/



the United States  
/ðə yu'nartəd steɪts/



Vietnam /viət'nəm/

b Cover the words.  
Look at the pictures.  
Say the countries.

the US = the United States  
the UK = the United Kingdom

c Write your country: \_\_\_\_\_. Practice saying it.

◀ p.6

### 2 NATIONALITIES

a 1 43))) Listen and repeat the countries and nationalities.

Country	Nationality
Brazil	Brazilian /brə'zɪliən/
Canada	Canadian /kə'neɪdiən/
Chile	Chilean /tʃɪ'leɪən/
China	Chinese /tʃaɪ'nɪz/
England	English /'ɪŋɡlɪʃ/
Japan	Japanese /dʒə'pə'nɪz/
Korea	Korean /kə'reɪən/
Mexico	Mexican /'meksɪkən/
Peru	Peruvian /pə'rʊviən/
Portugal	Portuguese /pɔːtʃə'ɡɪz/
Saudi Arabia	Saudi /'saʊdi/
Spain	Spanish /'spæɪnɪʃ/
the UK	British /'brɪtɪʃ/
the United States	American /ə'merɪkən/
Vietnam	Vietnamese /viət'nə'mɪz/



#### Countries and languages

The word for a language is often the same as the nationality adjective.

Country	Language
Canada, England, the UK, the US	English
Brazil, Portugal	Portuguese
Mexico, Peru, Spain, Chile	Spanish
Saudi Arabia	Arabic /'æɪbɪk/

Countries, nationalities, and languages begin with a CAPITAL letter, e.g., English NOT english

b Cover the words. Look at the flags. Say the country and nationality.

c Write your nationality: \_\_\_\_\_. Practice saying it.

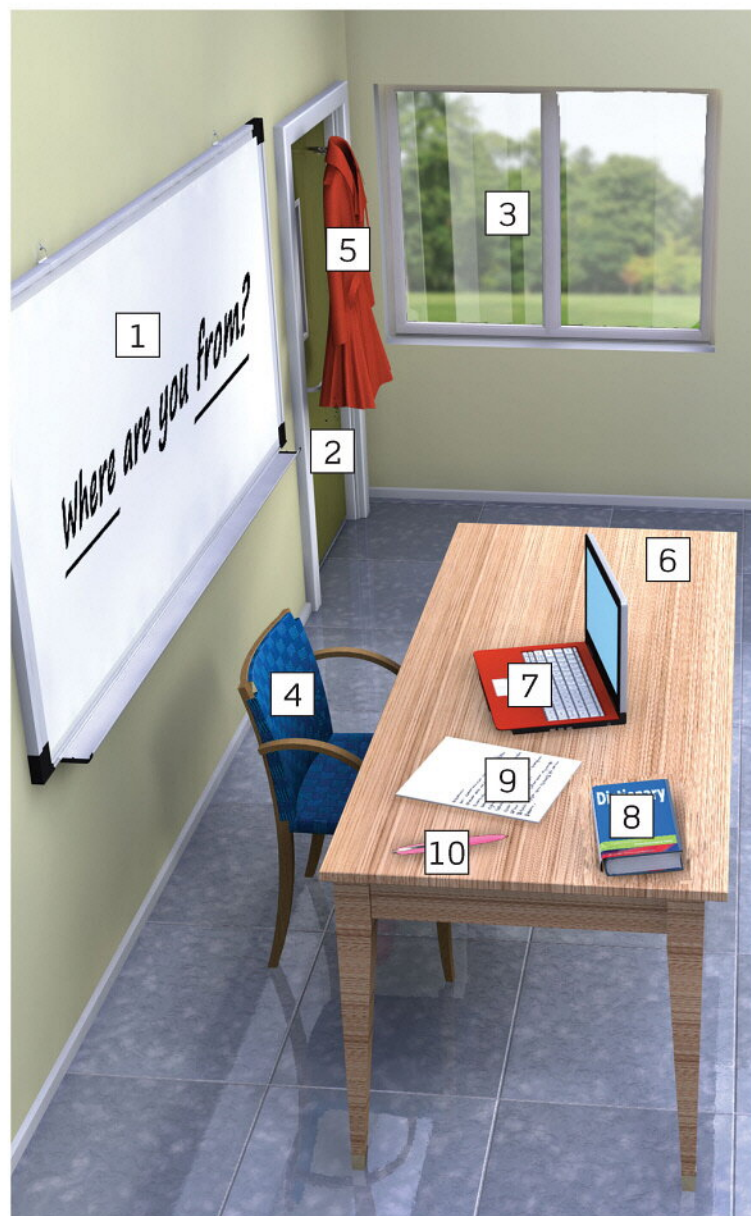
d Complete the sentences about you.

I'm \_\_\_\_\_, and I'm \_\_\_\_\_. (name, nationality)

I'm from \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_. (town / city, country)

◀ p.10

## 1 THINGS IN THE CLASSROOM



a 1 39))) Listen and repeat the words.

- 1 the board /bɔːd/
- 2 the door /dɔːr/
- 3 a window /'wɪndəʊ/
- 4 a chair /tʃeə/
- 5 a coat /kəʊt/
- 6 a table /'teɪbl/
- 7 a laptop /'læptɒp/
- 8 a dictionary /'dɪkʃənəri/
- 9 a piece of paper /'piː əv 'peɪpə/
- 10 a pen /pen/

b Cover the words. Look at the picture. Say the things.

◀ p.9

## 2 CLASSROOM LANGUAGE

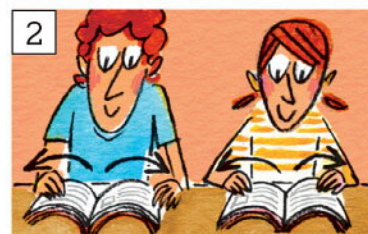
a 1 40))) Listen and repeat the phrases.

The teacher says ...



Look at the board, please.

/lʊk æt ðə bɔːd plɪz/



Open your books.

/'əʊpən jɔː bʊks/



Go to page 10.

/ɡəʊ tu peɪdʒ ten/



Close your books.

/klaʊz jɔː bʊks/



Stand up, please.

/stænd ʌp plɪz/



Sit down.

/sɪt daʊn/

You say ...



How do you spell it?

/haʊ du ju spel ɪt/



Can you repeat that, please?

/kæn ju rɪ'piːt ðæt plɪz/



What's \_\_\_\_\_ in English?

/wʌts ɪn 'ɪŋɡlɪʃ/



I don't understand.

/aɪ doʊnt ʌndə'stænd/

b Cover the words. Look at the pictures. Say the phrases.

◀ p.9



a 164))) Listen and repeat the words.

1 a cell phone /sɛl foun/

2 a bag /bæg/

3 a key /ki/

4 an umbrella /ʌm'brɛlə/

5 a credit card /'krɛdɪt kɑrd/

6 a photo /'fəʊtəʊ/

7 a watch /wɒtʃ/


8 glasses /'glæsɪz/

9 an ID card /aɪ'di kɑrd/

10 a wallet /'wɒlət/

11 a camera /'kæmərə/

12 gloves /glʌvz/

 a key, a bag BUT an umbrella, an ID card

b Cover the words. Look at the photo. Say the things.

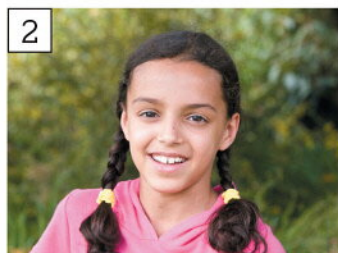
◀ p.16

# People and family

## VOCABULARY BANK

### 1 PEOPLE /'pipl/

a (2 22))) Listen and repeat the words.



- 1 a boy /bɔɪ/
- 2 a girl /gɜːl/
- 3 a man /mæn/
- 4 a woman /'wʊmən/
- 5 children /'tʃɪldrən/
- 6 friends /frɛndz/

b Cover the words. Look at the photos. Say the people.

c (2 23))) Listen and repeat the irregular plurals.

Irregular plurals			
Singular		Plural	
a child	/tʃaɪld/	children	/'tʃɪldrən/
a man	/mæn/	men	/mɛn/
a woman	/'wʊmən/	women	/'wɪmən/
a person	/'pɜːsn/	people	/'pipl/

d Cover the plural words. Say them.

### 2 FAMILY /'fæmli/

a (2 24))) Listen and repeat the words.



- 1 husband /'hʌzbənd/
- 2 wife /waɪf/
- 3 mother /'mʌðər/
- 4 father /'fɑːðər/
- 5 son /sʌn/
- 6 daughter /'dɔːtər/
- 7 brother /'brʌðər/
- 8 sister /'sɪstər/
- 9 boyfriend /'bɔɪfrɛnd/
- 10 girlfriend /'gɜːlfrɛnd/

b Cover the words. Look at the photos. Say the people.

◀ p.23

# Adjectives

## 1 COLORS

a (2 32))) Listen and repeat the words.

red /red/



green /grin/



yellow /'yelou/



blue /blu/



orange /'ɔrɪndʒ/



brown /braʊn/



black /blæk/



white /waɪt/



b Cover the words. Look at the photos. Say the colors.

## 2 COMMON ADJECTIVES

a (2 33))) Listen and repeat the words.

big (large)  
/bɪg/



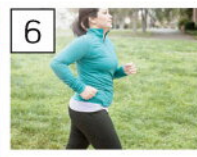
small  
/smɔl/

old  
/əʊld/



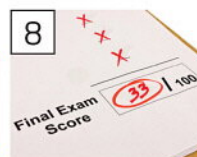
new  
/nu/

fast  
/fæst/



slow  
/sləʊ/

good  
/ɡʊd/



bad  
/bæd/

cheap  
/tʃi:p/



expensive  
/ɪk'spensɪv/

long  
/lɒŋ/



short  
/ʃɔ:t/

tall  
/tɔ:l/



short  
/ʃɔ:t/

b Cover the words. Look at the pictures. Say the adjectives.

c Test a partner.

A What's the opposite of *new*?

B Old. What's the opposite of \_\_\_\_\_?

d (2 34))) Listen and repeat the positive and negative adjectives.



### Positive and negative adjectives

✓ = good /ɡʊd/ ✓✓ = very good /'veri ɡʊd/ ✓✓✓ = great! /ɡreɪt/

x = bad /bæd/ xx = very bad /'veri bæd/ xxx = terrible! /'terəbl/

good-looking

/ɡʊd 'ləʊkɪŋ/



beautiful

/'byʊtəfʊl/



# Common verbs 1

## VOCABULARY BANK

a 2 42 ))) Listen and repeat the phrases.

live (*in a house*)  
/lɪv/



have (*children*)  
/hæv/

watch (*TV*)  
/wɒtʃ/



listen (*to the radio*)  
/lɪsn/

read (*the newspaper*)  
/riːd/



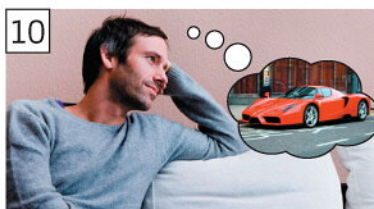
eat (*fast food*)  
/iːt/

make (*breakfast*)  
/meɪk/



drink (*coffee*)  
/drɪŋk/

speak (*English*)  
/spiːk/



want (*a new car*)  
/wɑːnt/

like (*cats*)  
/laɪk/



work (*in a store*)  
/wɜːk/

study (*Spanish*)  
/'stʌdi/



go (*to a museum*)  
/ɡoʊ/

b 2 43 ))) Cover the words. Listen and say the phrase.

))) in a house      live in a house

c Make true ☐ or ☐ sentences about you.

- 1 I live in \_\_\_\_\_. (a city / country)  
I don't live in \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 I eat \_\_\_\_\_. (a food)  
I don't eat \_\_\_\_\_.

3 I speak \_\_\_\_\_. (a language)

I don't speak \_\_\_\_\_.

4 I read \_\_\_\_\_. (a newspaper)

I don't read \_\_\_\_\_.

5 I like \_\_\_\_\_. (a famous person)

I don't like \_\_\_\_\_.

◀ p.28

# Food and drink

## VOCABULARY BANK

a 2 48 ))) Listen and repeat the words.

### Food /fud/



1  
fish  
/fɪʃ/



2  
meat  
/mit/



3  
pasta  
/'pastə/



4  
rice  
/'raɪs/



5  
eggs  
/'egz/



6  
salad  
/'sæləd/



7  
vegetables  
/'vedʒtəblz/



8  
potatoes  
/'pə'tetəʊz/



9  
fruit  
/'frut/



10  
bread  
/'bred/



11  
butter  
/'bʌtər/



12  
cheese  
/'tʃi:z/



13  
sugar  
/'ʃʊgər/



14  
a sandwich  
/ə 'sændwɪʃ/



15  
cereal  
/'sɪriəl/



16  
chocolate  
/'tʃɒklət/

### Drink /drɪŋk/



17  
coffee  
/'kafi/



18  
tea  
/ti/



19  
milk  
/mɪlk/



20  
water  
/'wɔ:tər/



21  
juice  
/dʒʊs/



22  
soda  
/'soudə/



#### Meals

breakfast (in the morning) /'brekfəst/

lunch (in the afternoon) /lʌntʃ/

dinner (in the evening) /'dɪnər/

What do you have for breakfast? I have cereal and coffee. (have = eat and / or drink)

b Cover the words. Look at the photos.  
Say the words.

c Practice with a partner.

Do you like...? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

◀ p.30

# Jobs and places of work

## VOCABULARY BANK

### 1 WHAT DO THEY DO?

a (2 69))) Listen and repeat the words.



1 a teacher /'titʃər/  
2 a doctor /'daktər/  
3 a nurse /nərs/  
4 a salesperson /'seɪlzpəsn/  
5 a waiter /'weɪtər/  
a waitress /'weɪtrəs/



6 an assistant /ə'sɪstənt/  
7 a lawyer /'lɔɪər/  
8 a policeman /pə'lɪsmən/  
a policewoman /pə'lɪswʊmən/  
9 a factory worker /'fæktəri 'wɜrkər/  
10 a student /'studnt/

b Cover the words. Ask and answer in pairs.

What does she do? (She's a teacher.)  
What does he do?

c (2 70))) Listen and repeat the sentences.

He works for Google. /'gʊɡl/  
He's in school.  
She's in college. /'kɒlɪdʒ/  
She's at university. /junə'vɜrsəti/  
She studies economics. /ɛkə'nɒmɪks/  
He doesn't have a job.  
She's retired. /rɪ'taɪəd/

d What do you do?

I \_\_\_\_\_.

### 2 WHERE DO THEY WORK?

a (2 71))) Listen and repeat the phrases.



1 in a hospital /'hɒspɪtl/  
2 in a store /stɔr/  
3 in a restaurant /'restrənt/  
4 in an office /'ɒfəs/



5 in a school /skul/  
6 in a factory /'fæktəri/  
7 at home /həʊm/  
8 on the street /stri:t/

b Cover the phrases. Look at the photos. Say the phrases.

c Ask and answer with a partner.

Where does a doctor work? (In a hospital.)

d Where do you work?

I \_\_\_\_\_.

◀ p.34

# A typical day

a 3 4))) Listen and repeat the phrases.

## 1 IN THE MORNING /'mɔːnɪŋ/



get up  
/get ʌp/



have breakfast  
/hæv 'brekfəst/



take a shower  
/teɪk ə 'ʃaʊər/



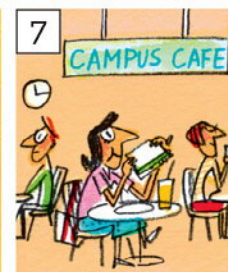
go to school  
/gou tu sku:l/



go to work  
/gou tu wɜːk/  
(by bus, train,  
car, etc.)  
/bʌs/ /treɪn/ /kɑː/



have a coffee  
/hæv ə 'kafi/



have a sandwich  
/hæv ə 'sændwɪtʃ/

## 2 IN THE AFTERNOON /æftər'nun/



have lunch  
/hæv lʌntʃ/



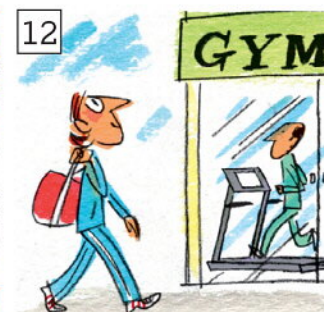
finish work  
/'fɪnɪʃ wɜːk/



go home  
/gou hoʊm/



go shopping  
/gou 'ʃɑːpɪŋ/



go to the gym  
/gou tu ðə dʒɪm/

## 3 IN THE EVENING /'ivɪŋ/



make dinner  
/meɪk 'dɪnər/



have dinner  
/hæv 'dɪnər/



do housework  
/du 'haʊswɜːk/



watch TV  
/wɒtʃ ti 'vi/



take a bath  
/teɪk ə bæθ/



go to bed  
/gou tu bed/



**make and do**

make dinner / coffee BUT do housework

**go with to and the**

go to the gym, go to the movies /'mʊvɪz/

go to work, go to school, go to bed

go home

b 3 5))) Listen and point to the picture.

c In pairs, look at the pictures and describe their day.

They get up at quarter to seven. } They have breakfast.

◀ p.36

# Common verbs 2

## VOCABULARY BANK

### 1

a 3 12 ))) Listen and repeat the verbs and verb phrases.

go ice  
skating  
/gou ais  
'sketiŋ/



play golf  
/plei gɒlf/

play  
sports  
/plei spɔ:ts/



play the  
piano  
/plei ðə  
pi'ænəʊ/

ski  
/ski/



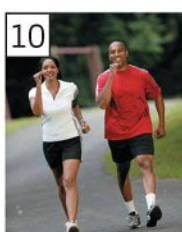
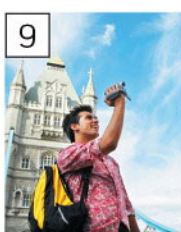
snowboard  
/'snəʊbɔ:rd/

stay inside  
/steɪ m'saɪd/



swim  
/swɪm/

visit a city  
/'vɪzət ə  
'sɪti/



walk  
/wɔ:k/

b Cover the words. Look at the pictures. Say the verbs or phrases.

c Work in pairs. Make true statements with *sometimes* or *never*.

I sometimes play sports. I never go ice skating.

◀ p.41

### 2

a 3 20 ))) Listen and repeat the verbs and verb phrases.

take a  
break  
/teɪk ə  
breɪk/



change  
money  
/tʃeɪndʒ  
'mʌni/

use the  
Internet  
/yuz ðə  
'ɪntənet/



take  
photos  
/teɪk  
'fəʊtəʊz/

drive  
/draɪv/



pay by  
credit card  
/peɪ baɪ  
'kredɪt  
kɑ:rd/

park  
/pɑ:k/



come  
/kʌm/

see  
/si/



hear  
/hɪr/

b Cover the words. Look at the pictures. Say the verbs or phrases.

◀ p.43

# Months and ordinal numbers

## 1 MONTHS

a 3 21 ))) Listen and repeat the months.

<b>JAN</b>	<u>J</u> anuary /'dʒænyuəri/
<b>FEB</b>	<u>F</u> ebruary /'febyuəri/
<b>MAR</b>	<u>M</u> arch /mɑːtʃ/
<b>APR</b>	<u>A</u> pril /'eɪprəl/
<b>MAY</b>	<u>M</u> ay /meɪ/
<b>JUN</b>	<u>J</u> une /dʒun/
<b>JUL</b>	<u>J</u> uly /dʒuː'lai/
<b>AUG</b>	<u>A</u> ugust /'ɒgəst/
<b>SEP</b>	<u>S</u> eptember /sep'tembər/
<b>OCT</b>	<u>O</u> ctober /ək'təʊbər/
<b>NOV</b>	<u>N</u> ovember /nou'vembər/
<b>DEC</b>	<u>D</u> ecember /di'sembər/



Months begin with a CAPITAL letter.  
January NOT january

b Cover the months and look at JAN, FEB, etc.  
Remember and say the months.

◀ p.44

## 2 ORDINAL NUMBERS

a 3 22 ))) Listen and repeat the ordinal numbers from 1st–20th.

<b>1<sup>st</sup></b>	<u>f</u> irst /fɜːst/	<b>17<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>s</u> event <u>e</u> enth /sevn'tinθ/
<b>2<sup>nd</sup></b>	<u>s</u> econd /'sekənd/	<b>18<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>e</u> ight <u>e</u> enth /eɪ'tinθ/
<b>3<sup>rd</sup></b>	<u>t</u> hird /θɜːd/	<b>19<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>n</u> inete <u>e</u> nth /naɪn'tinθ/
<b>4<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>f</u> ourth /fɔːθ/	<b>20<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>t</u> wenti <u>e</u> th /twentiəθ/
<b>5<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>f</u> ifth /fɪfθ/	<b>21<sup>st</sup></b>	<u>t</u> wenty- <u>f</u> irst /twenti'fɜːst/
<b>6<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>s</u> ixth /sɪksθ/	<b>22<sup>nd</sup></b>	<u>t</u> wenty- <u>s</u> econd /twenti'sekənd/
<b>7<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>s</u> eventh /'sevnθ/	<b>23<sup>rd</sup></b>	<u>t</u> wenty- <u>t</u> hird /twenti'θɜːd/
<b>8<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>e</u> ighth /eɪθ/	<b>24<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>t</u> wenty- <u>f</u> ourth /twenti'fɔːθ/
<b>9<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>n</u> inth /naɪnθ/	<b>25<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>t</u> wenty- <u>f</u> ifth /twenti'fɪfθ/
<b>10<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>t</u> enth /tenθ/	<b>26<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>t</u> wenty- <u>s</u> ixth /twenti'sɪksθ/
<b>11<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>e</u> leventh /ɪ'levənθ/	<b>27<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>t</u> wenty- <u>s</u> eventh /twenti'sevnθ/
<b>12<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>t</u> welfth /twelfθ/	<b>28<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>t</u> wenty- <u>e</u> ighth /twenti'eɪθ/
<b>13<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>t</u> hirteenth /θɜː'tinθ/	<b>29<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>t</u> wenty- <u>n</u> inth /twenti'naɪnθ/
<b>14<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>f</u> ourteenth /fɔː'tinθ/	<b>30<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>t</u> hirti <u>e</u> th /'θɜːtiəθ/
<b>15<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>f</u> ifteenth /fɪf'tinθ/	<b>31<sup>st</sup></b>	<u>t</u> hirty- <u>f</u> irst /θɜːti'fɜːst/
<b>16<sup>th</sup></b>	<u>s</u> ixteenth /sɪks'tinθ/		

b 3 23 ))) Practice saying the ordinal numbers from 21st–31st. Then listen and repeat.

◀ p.44

## 1 IN A HOTEL ROOM



a 3 44 ))) Listen and repeat the words.

- 1 a bed /bed/
- 2 a pillow /'pɪləʊ/
- 3 a table /'teɪbl/
- 4 a lamp /læmp/
- 5 a remote control /rɪ'məʊt kən'trəʊl/
- 6 a suitcase /'su:tkeɪs/
- 7 the floor /flɔː/
- 8 the bathroom /'bæθrʊm/
- 9 a bathtub /'bæθtʌb/
- 10 a shower /'ʃaʊə/
- 11 a towel /'taʊəl/
- 12 a toilet /'tɔɪlət/

b Cover the words. Look at the picture. Say the words.

## 2 IN A HOTEL



a 3 45 ))) Listen and repeat the words.

- 1 a swimming pool /'swɪmɪŋ pul/
- 2 a spa /spa/
- 3 a hot tub /hət tʌb/
- 4 a restaurant /'restrənt/
- 5 a kitchen /'kɪtʃən/
- 6 a gym /dʒɪm/
- 7 an elevator /'eləveɪtər/
- 8 a gift shop /gɪft ʃɒp/
- 9 reception /rɪ'sepʃn/
- 10 a yard /jɑːd/
- 11 a parking lot /'pɑːkɪŋ lɒt/

b Cover the words. Look at the picture. Say the words.

c Practice with a partner. Ask and answer.

Where's the swimming pool? It's on the fifth floor.

# Places

## VOCABULARY BANK

a 3 55 ))) Listen and repeat the words.

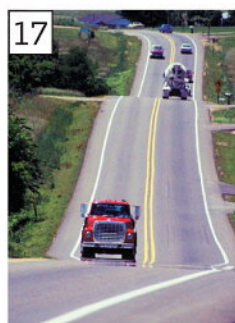
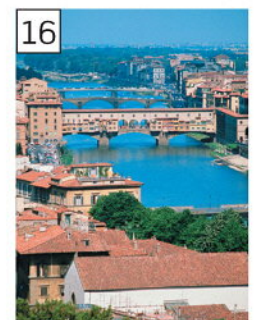
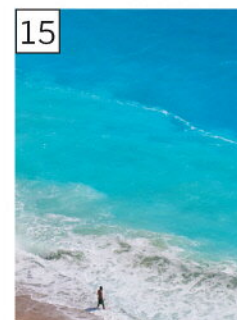
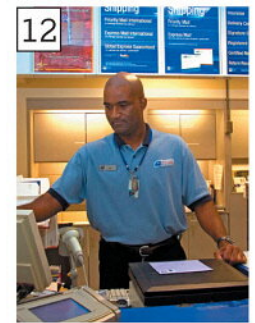
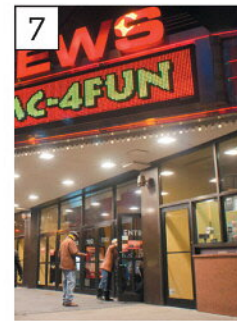
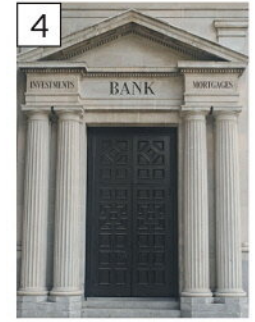
- 1 a city /'sɪti/
- 2 a town /taʊn/
- 3 a village /'vɪlɪdʒ/
- 4 a bank /bæŋk/
- 5 a pharmacy /'fɑ:məsi/
- 6 a school /skul/
- 7 a movie theater /'muvi 'θiətər/
- 8 a hospital /'hɒspɪtl/
- 9 a store /stɔ:/
- 10 a supermarket /'supərmarkət/
- 11 a museum /myu'ziəm/
- 12 a post office /pəʊst 'ɒfəs/
- 13 a park /pɑ:k/
- 14 a beach /bi:tʃ/
- 15 the ocean /'oʊʃn/
- 16 a river /'rɪvər/
- 17 a road /rəʊd/
- 18 a gas station /gæs 'steɪʃn/
- 19 a train station /treɪn 'steɪʃn/
- 20 an airport /'eɪpɔ:t/

b Cover the words. Look at the pictures. Say the places.

c Do you live in a village, town, or city? Make true sentences about the place where you live:

There's a / an...  
 There isn't a / an...  
 There are two / three...  
 There are some...  
 There are a lot of...  
 There aren't any...

*I live in a big city.  
 There's a river.  
 There are two airports.*



◀ p.55

# Common verbs 3

## VOCABULARY BANK

### 1

a 4 6 ))) Listen and repeat the verb phrases.

cook a meal  
/kʊk ə mi:l/



help people  
/help 'pi:pl/



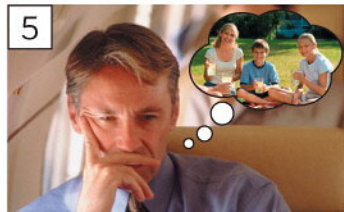
laugh  
/læf/



look in the mirror  
/lʊk in ðə 'mɪrər/



miss your family  
/mɪs jɔ: 'fæmli/



move to a new house  
/mʊv tu ə nu haʊs/



travel /'trævl/  
(by taxi,  
motorcycle, train, etc.)  
/'tæksi/ /'mʊtərsaɪkl/  
/treɪn/



try new food  
/traɪ nu fʊd/



b Cover the verb phrases. Look at the pictures.  
Say the words and phrases.

◀ p.59

### 2

a 4 22 ))) Listen and repeat the verb phrases.



call a friend  
/kɔ:l ə frend/



find a job  
/faɪnd ə dʒɒb/



get a letter  
/get ə 'letər/



give a present  
/gɪv ə 'preznt/



leave the house  
/liv ðə haʊs/



lose your keys  
/lu:z jɔ: kiz/



send an email  
/send ən 'imeɪl/



take an umbrella  
/teɪk ən ʌm'brelə/



tell somebody a story  
/tel 'sʌmbədi ə 'stɔ:ri/



turn on the light  
/tɜ:n ən ðə laɪt/



turn off the light  
/tɜ:n ɒf ðə laɪt/



wait for the train  
/weɪt fɔ: ðə treɪn/

b Cover the verb phrases. Look at the pictures.  
Say the phrases.

◀ p.66

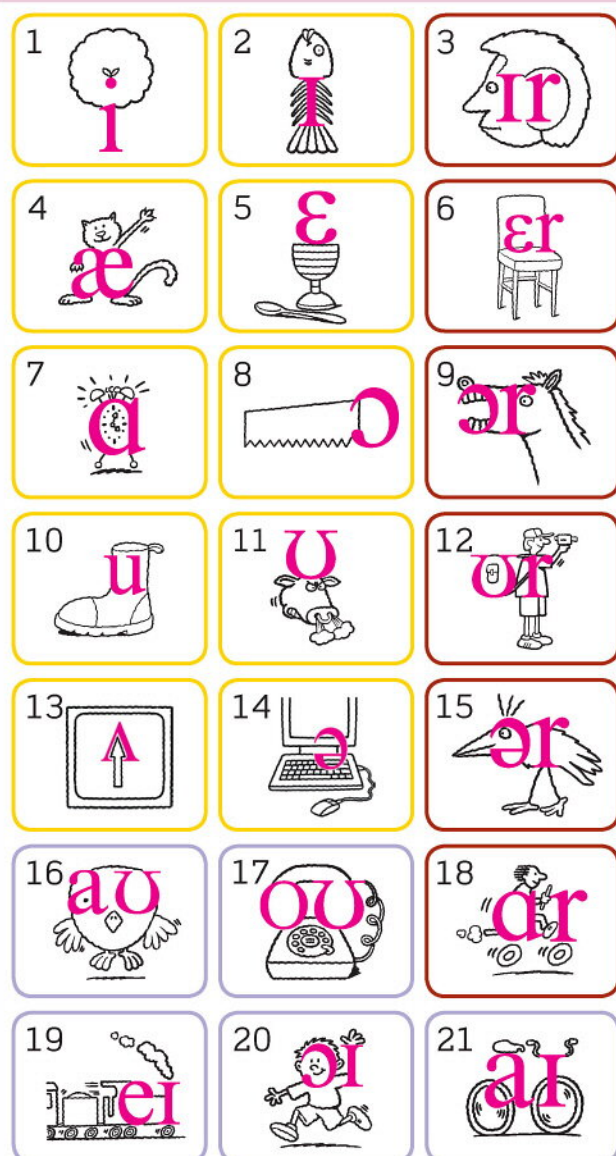
# Irregular verbs

- a **4 27** ))) Listen and repeat the irregular verbs in the present and the past, e.g., *is – was*.
- b Cover the **PAST** column. Practice saying the sentences in the past.

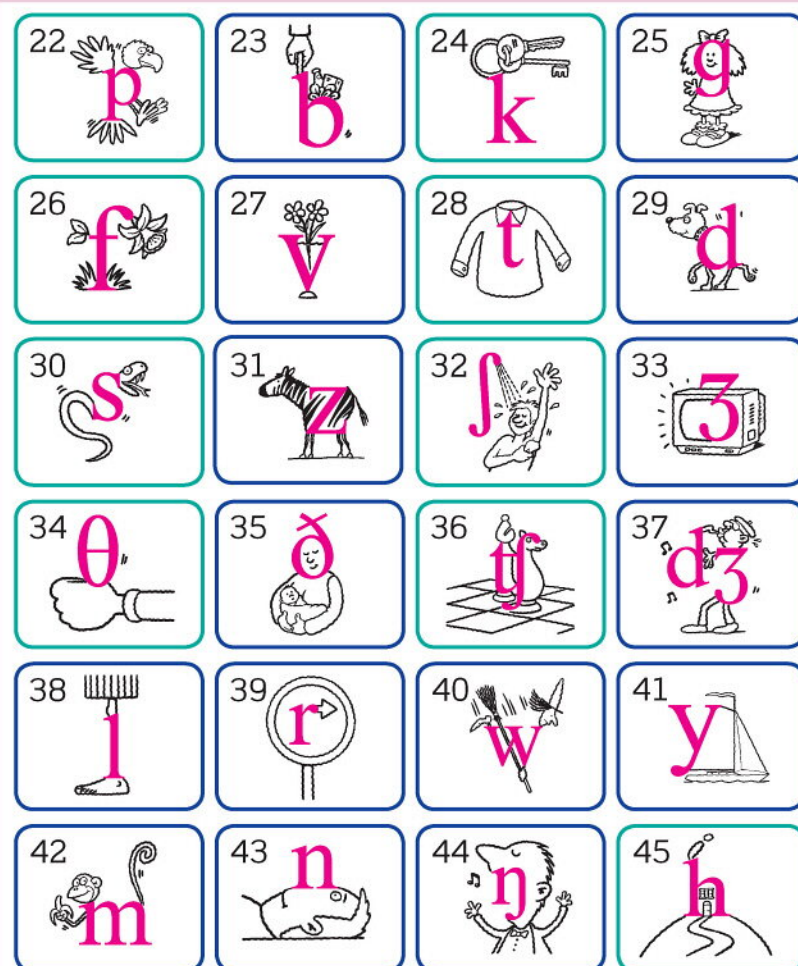
PRESENT		PAST
is	He _____ at work yesterday.	<b>was</b> /wəz/
are	They _____ waitresses last year.	<b>were</b> /wɜː/
<b>begin</b>	It _____ to snow.	<b>began</b> /bɪˈɡæn/
<b>break</b>	I'm sorry I _____ the window!	<b>broke</b> /brəʊk/
<b>buy</b>	We _____ a new car last week.	<b>bought</b> /bɔːt/
<b>can</b>	He _____ swim when he was four.	<b>could</b> /kəd/
<b>come</b>	She _____ to work late.	<b>came</b> /keɪm/
<b>do</b>	They _____ housework last weekend.	<b>did</b> /dɪd/
<b>drink</b>	He _____ juice for breakfast.	<b>drank</b> /dræŋk/
<b>drive</b>	She _____ fast because she was in a hurry.	<b>drove</b> /drouv/
<b>eat</b>	We _____ delicious food on vacation.	<b>ate</b> /eɪt/
<b>find</b>	I _____ my keys under the bed.	<b>found</b> /faʊnd/
<b>get</b>	You _____ up late this morning.	<b>got</b> /ɡɒt/
<b>give</b>	They _____ Mark a birthday present.	<b>gave</b> /geɪv/
<b>go</b>	I _____ to school by taxi yesterday.	<b>went</b> /went/
<b>have</b>	They _____ a good time on vacation.	<b>had</b> /həd/
<b>hear</b>	We _____ a noise during the night.	<b>heard</b> /hɜːd/
<b>know</b>	She _____ all the answers on the test.	<b>knew</b> /nu/
<b>leave</b>	The train _____ the station at 8:00	<b>left</b> /left/
<b>lose</b>	I _____ my keys on the train.	<b>lost</b> /lɒst/
<b>make</b>	John _____ dinner last night.	<b>made</b> /meɪd/
<b>meet</b>	She _____ her friends at the cafe.	<b>met</b> /met/
<b>pay</b>	I _____ by credit card at the store.	<b>paid</b> /peɪd/
<b>read</b>	They _____ the newspaper on the bus.	<b>read</b> /red/
<b>ride</b>	We _____ our bikes in the park.	<b>rode</b> /roud/
<b>say</b>	"Excuse me," she _____.	<b>said</b> /sed/
<b>see</b>	She _____ a famous person on the airplane.	<b>saw</b> /sɔː/
<b>send</b>	I _____ an email to my mother.	<b>sent</b> /sent/
<b>sit</b>	They _____ near the window.	<b>sat</b> /sæt/
<b>sleep</b>	I _____ for eight hours last night.	<b>slept</b> /slept/
<b>speak</b>	She _____ Japanese to the waiter.	<b>spoke</b> /spəʊk/
<b>swim</b>	We _____ in the ocean in Brazil.	<b>swam</b> /swæm/
<b>take</b>	He _____ a lot of photos of his friends.	<b>took</b> /tuk/
<b>tell</b>	I _____ my children a story last night.	<b>told</b> /təʊld/
<b>think</b>	We _____ the music was terrible.	<b>thought</b> /θɔːt/
<b>wear</b>	He _____ a suit at the office.	<b>wore</b> /wɜː/
<b>write</b>	She _____ a lot of text messages.	<b>wrote</b> /rouʔ/

# English sounds

## SOUND BANK



- |                |                          |
|----------------|--------------------------|
| 1 tree /tri/   | 12 tourist /'tʊrɪst/     |
| 2 fish /fɪʃ/   | 13 up /ʌp/               |
| 3 ear /ɪr/     | 14 computer /kəm'pyutər/ |
| 4 cat /kæt/    | 15 bird /bɜrd/           |
| 5 egg /ɛg/     | 16 owl /aʊl/             |
| 6 chair /tʃɛr/ | 17 phone /fəʊn/          |
| 7 clock /klɒk/ | 18 car /kɑr/             |
| 8 saw /sɔ/     | 19 train /treɪn/         |
| 9 horse /hɔrs/ | 20 boy /bɔɪ/             |
| 10 boot /bʊt/  | 21 bike /baɪk/           |
| 11 bull /bʊl/  |                          |














- |                           |                    |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| 22 parrot /'pærət/        | 34 thumb /θʌm/     |
| 23 bag /bæg/              | 35 mother /'mʌðər/ |
| 24 keys /kɪz/             | 36 chess /tʃɛs/    |
| 25 girl /gɜrl/            | 37 jazz /dʒæz/     |
| 26 flower /'flaʊər/       | 38 leg /leg/       |
| 27 vase /veɪs/            | 39 right /raɪt/    |
| 28 tie /taɪ/              | 40 witch /wɪtʃ/    |
| 29 dog /dɒg/              | 41 yacht /jɑt/     |
| 30 snake /sneɪk/          | 42 monkey /'mʌŋki/ |
| 31 zebra /'zɪbrə/         | 43 nose /noʊz/     |
| 32 shower /'ʃaʊər/        | 44 singer /'sɪŋər/ |
| 33 television /'teləvɪʒn/ | 45 house /haʊs/    |

# Sounds and spelling – vowels

## SOUND BANK

























	usual spelling	! but also
 tree	ee three meet ea please read e she we	people key piece
 fish	i Italy six is it big window	English women gym
 ear	eer cheer ere here we're ear near year	
 cat	a bag thanks black man bad that	
 egg	e spell ten seven twenty Mexico	friend breakfast bread
 chair	air airport upstairs are haircut careful	their there where
 clock	o not hot stop hospital	what watch want
 saw	al talk walk aw saw draw awful	water bought daughter
 horse	or short important door	four board
 boot	oo too food u* excuse blue ew new	two you juice

	usual spelling	! but also
 bull	u full sugar oo good book look cook	woman could
 tourist	A very unusual sound. euro Europe sure plural	
 up	u umbrella number bus husband but	son brother double
 computer	Many different spellings. /ə/ is always unstressed. pocket seven famous about children	
 bird	er person verb ir first third ur nurse Turkey	work word world
 owl	ou out house ow pound sound town down	
 phone	o* open close no hello oa coat	window
 car	ar are park start far	heart
 train	a* name late ai email Spain ay day say	eight they great
 boy	oi coin noise oy boyfriend enjoy	
 bike	i* I Hi nice y bye my igh night flight	buy

\* especially before consonant + e

# Sounds and spelling – consonants

## SOUND BANK

	usual spelling	! but also		usual spelling	! but also
 parrot	<b>p</b> paper pillow sleep top <b>pp</b> stopped happen		 thumb	<b>th</b> thing think tenth birthday month Thursday	
 bag	<b>b</b> board British remember job <b>bb</b> rubber		 mother	<b>th</b> the father weather their brother they	
 key	<b>c</b> come cold <b>k</b> ski take <b>ck</b> back clock	school	 chess	<b>ch</b> children lunch <b>tch</b> watch kitchen <b>t (+ure)</b> picture	
 girl	<b>g</b> go green big blog <b>gg</b> eggs		 jazz	<b>j</b> Japan juice job <b>dge</b> bridge	gym page
 flower	<b>f</b> fifteen Friday wife <b>ph</b> photo phone <b>ff</b> office coffee		 leg	<b>l</b> lamp listen plan table <b>ll</b> small umbrella	
 vase	<b>v</b> TV very have live seven five	of	 right	<b>r</b> red rice problem children <b>rr</b> terrible married	write wrong
 tie	<b>t</b> time tell start late <b>tt</b> letter butter	liked finished	 witch	<b>w</b> watch twenty word we <b>wh</b> what white where	one
 dog	<b>d</b> did drink study good <b>dd</b> address middle	played cried	 yacht	<b>y</b> yellow your yes you before <b>u</b> music university	
 snake	<b>s</b> small fast <b>ss</b> stress waitress	nice city	 monkey	<b>m</b> mountain Monday September come <b>mm</b> summer swimming	
 zebra	<b>z</b> zero Brazil <b>s</b> bags cars husband easy		 nose	<b>n</b> nine never men piano <b>nn</b> sunny dinner	know
 shower	<b>sh</b> shop she Spanish finish <b>ti</b> information (+ vowel) reservation	sugar sure	 singer	<b>ng</b> thing long doing going playing wrong	think thank
 television	An unusual sound. usually usual		 house	<b>h</b> hello hi how hotel have hurry	who

**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

198 Madison Avenue  
New York, NY 10016 USA

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP,  
United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2013

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

First published in 2013

2017 2016 2015 2014 2013

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

## No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, by licence or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this work in any other form and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Links to third party websites are provided by Oxford in good faith and for information only. Oxford disclaims any responsibility for the materials contained in any third party website referenced in this work

General Manager: Laura Pearson

Executive Publishing Manager: Erik Gundersen

Senior Managing Editor: Louisa van Houten

Senior Development Editor: Cristina Zurawski

Associate Editor: Hana Yoo

Design Director: Susan Sanguily

Executive Design Manager: Maj-Britt Hagsted

Associate Design Manager: Michael Steinhofner

Senior Designer: Yin Ling Wong

Electronic Production Manager: Julie Armstrong

Image Manager: Trisha Masterson

Image Editors: Liah Pashayan, Joe Kassner

Production Coordinator: Brad Tucker

ISBN: 978 0 19 4776202

MULTI-PACK A (PACK)

ISBN: 978 0 19 477584 7

STUDENT BOOK/WORKBOOK A (PACK COMPONENT)

ISBN: 978 0 19 477668 4

ICHECKER CD-ROM (PACK COMPONENT)

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources

## STUDENT BOOK ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Cover Design: Yin Ling Wong

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material:

Illustrations by: Cover: Chellie Carroll; Peter Bull: pgs. 52, 53 (in, on under, over), 70 (map bckgd); Michael Crampton: pgs. 18, 19; Paul Dickinson: pgs. 24; Mark Duffin: pgs. 30, 45, 53 (remote control), 56, 57, 77, 81, 82, 116, 118 (school room), 119, 128; Jacob Etter: pgs. 8, 72, 76, 127; Atsushi Hara: pgs. 32, 93, 118, 125; Satoshi Hashimoto: pgs. 94, 96, 97, 99, 100, 103, 107, 109, 114; Sophie Joyce: pgs. 14, 16, 31, 73; Tim Marrs: pgs. 6; Jerome Mireault: pgs. 22, 28, 29, 42, 43, 79; Gavin Reece: pgs. 4, 5, 10, 11, 34, 47, 66, 67; Joe Taylor: pgs. 37, 48, 50; Mike Tofanelli: pgs. 55; Jonathan Williams: pgs. 9, 58, 68.

Pronunciation chart artwork: by Ellis Nadler

We would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce the following photographs: Cover: Gemenacom/shutterstock.com, Andrey\_Popov/shutterstock.com, Wavebreakmedia/shutterstock.com, Image Source/Getty Images, Lane Oatey/Blue Jean Images/Getty Images, BJI/Blue Jean Images/Getty Images, Image Source/Corbis, Yuri Arcurs/

Tetra Images/Corbis, Wavebreak Media Ltd./Corbis; pg. 6 VisitBritain/Getty Images; pg. 7 (building) imagebroker.net/SuperStock, (man) SuperStock/Purestock/Alamy, (Monte) REUTERS/Rickey Rogers, (Rain) ChinaFotoPress/Getty Images, (woman) amana images inc./Alamy; pg. 8 (ATM) Flirt/SuperStock, (BMW) Trevor Smith/istockphoto.com, (computer) OUP/D. Hurst, (Dj) dpaint/shutterstock.com, (TV) OUP/Tony Cordoza, (WWW) OUP/1Apix; pg. 10 (1) ableimages/Masterfile, (2) OUP/BestPhotoStudio, (3) Pam McLean/Getty Images; pg. 11 (Adele) NBC via Getty Images, (Banh mi) Paul\_Brighton/shutterstock.com, (car) Siracusa Productions/TRANSTOCK/Transtock/Corbis, (Cristiano) AP Photo/Daniel Ochoa de Olza, (Gisele) LAN/Corbis, (Lenovo) Yumeto Yamazaki/AFL0/Nippon News/Corbis, (Lucy) 2011 WireImage/Getty Images, (phone) Bloomberg via Getty Images, (Robert) Anita Bugge/WireImage/Getty Images, (tacos) Thomas Barwick/Getty Images; pg. 12 (girls) fianckreporter/istockphoto.com, (man profile) oliveromg/shutterstock.com, (man1) Glow Asia RF/Alamy, (man2) Tom Grill/Corbis; pg. 13 duo C/Corbis; pg. 15 (Brazil) Andresr/shutterstock.com, (Canada) OUP/Comstock, (Vietnam) ULTRA.F/Getty Images; pg. 16 (bus) Marnie Burkhardt/Corbis, (plane) Jeff Greenberg/AGE fotostock; pg. 17 (books) OUP/Brand X Pictures, (camera) OUP/Heather Gail Delaney, (computer) OUP/Okea, (credit cards) ded pixto/shutterstock.com, (gloves) OUP, (ID) Wiskerke/Alamy, (keys) OUP/Rafa Irusta, (pens) Eyecandy Pro/Masterfile, (phone) OUP/Vadym Nechyporenko, (umbrella) OUP/Corbis, (wallet) Jason Lugo/istockphoto.com, (watch) jmarkow/shutterstock.com; pg. 20 (Euro bill) OUP/Eye-Stock, (Euro coin) Mpanchenko/shutterstock.com, (memory card) Jakub Vacek/shutterstock.com, (paper) 2010StockVS/Alamy, (phone card) dk/Alamy, (ticket) Christina Wilton/Alamy, (UK bill) Ben Molyneux/Alamy, (UK coin) OUP/Images, (US bill) OUP, (US coin) OUP/Photodisc; pg. 21 Oleksiy Maksymenko/AGE fotostock; pg. 23 (family, left) Monkey Business Images/shutterstock.com, (man) kertlis/istockphoto.com, (family, right) Sherrie Nickol/Citizen Stock/Corbis; pg. 25 (man car) Wittelsbach bernd/istockphoto.com, (woman car) Martyn Goddard/Corbis; pg. 26 (glasses, wallet) OUP/Photodisc, (ID) ZUMA Wire Service/Alamy, (map) Kevin Wheel/Alamy, (shirt) Ocean/Corbis, (watches) benoitb/istockphoto.com; pg. 27 (bottom) Young-Wolff Photography/Alamy, (top) LWA/Dann Tardif/Getty Images; pg. 29 (cat) OUP/Corbis, (food) OUP/DAJ, (girl) Andres Rodriguez/Alamy, (house) OUP/vahamrick; pg. 30 GlowImages/Alamy; pg. 31 esemelwe/Getty Images; pg. 35 Yuri Arcurs/shutterstock.com; pg. 36 (burger) Lew Robertson/Getty Images, (man) Klaus Tiedge/Corbis, (woman) Exotica/SuperStock; pg. 37 (Cowell) J. Emilio Flores/Corbis, (X Factor) Chelsea Lauren/WireImage/Getty Images; pg. 39 bonchan/shutterstock.com; pg. 40 (bottom) Peter Barrit/Getty Images, (top) Christopher Pillitz/In Pictures/Corbis; pg. 41 Blend Images/Alamy; pg. 43 (credit cards) Richard Levine/Alamy, (currency) ATTILA KOVACS/epa/Corbis, (food) zmkstudio/shutterstock.com, (mph) Adventure\_Photo/istockphoto.com, (parking) pearleye/istockphoto.com, (phone) fotototo/AGE fotostock, (photos) OUP/fStop, (soccer) George Clerk/istockphoto.com, (swimming) Tish1/shutterstock.com, (wifi) Daniel Zgombic/istockphoto.com; pg. 44 (5th Avenue) Glow Images, Inc/Getty Images, (7th Avenue) Tomas Abad/AGE fotostock, (Halloween) KidStock/Blend Images/Corbis, (July 4th) REUTERS/Hyungwon Kang, (Second Life logo) Andia/Alamy, (Second Life) AP Photo/Screenshot by Peter Zschunke, (soccer) Dan Rowley/Colorsport/Corbis, (Times Square) Jeff Kravitz/FilmMagic/Getty Images, (Valentines Day) Cultura/Spark Photographic; pg. 46 (1) Abel Mitja Varela/istockphoto.com, (2) MJTH/shutterstock.com, (3) imagebroker.net/SuperStock, (4) Corbis Cusp/Alamy, (5, 6) Blend Images/shutterstock.com, (Brazil) F1 ONLINE/SuperStock, (Coliseum) Alexandr Tkachuk/istockphoto.com, (Eiffel Tower) OUP/Photodisc, (woman kitchen) Fancy/Alamy, (woman right) Floresco Productions/Corbis; pg. 47 (Dubai) Rolf Bruderer/Masterfile, (Peru) Neale Cousland/shutterstock.com; pg. 48 (kids) Marzanna Syncerz/istockphoto.com, (train) Aflo Co. Ltd./Alamy, (woman snow) AFP/Getty Images, (work) Jupiterimages/Getty Images; pg. 49 (house) Andre Jenny/Alamy, (nurse) Image Source/Corbis; pg. 51 Oote Boe Photography/Alamy; pg. 52 (beds) Juan Carlos tinjaca/shutterstock.com, (chair) mikedray/shutterstock.com, (clock) Kenneth C. Zirkel/istockphoto.com, (couple) Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/Blend Image/Blend Images/Corbis, (door) Raymond Forbes/AGE fotostock, (phone) OUP/Stockbyte, (shower) gh19/shutterstock.com, (Tikal) Danny Lehman/Corbis, (TV) OUP/Tony Cordoza, (window) Dejan Krsmanovic/Alamy; pg. 53 (Japan) J Marshall-Tribaleye Images/Alamy, (Netherlands) www.Hotelsuites.nl, (New Zealand) www.woodlynpark.co.nz; pg. 54 (Berry) ZUMA Wire Service/Alamy, (Chan) REUTERS/Yuriko Nakao, (Cowell) RD/Orchon/Retna Ltd./Corbis, (Crowe) Rune Hellestad/Corbis, (Fox) Dimitrios Kambouris/WireImage/Getty Images, (GaGa) Patsy Lynch/Retna Ltd./Corbis, (Jackman) REUTERS/Michaela Rehle, (Jackson) WINGNUT FILMS/THE KOBAL COLLECTION, (Jlo) Peter Kramer/NBC/NBC NewsWire/Getty Images, (West) Jason Moore/ZUMA Press/Corbis; pp. 58–59 Courtesy of McKenzie R. Nagle; pg. 60 (dad) UpperCut Images/Getty Images, (girl) OUP; pg. 63 (exterior) Stefano Paterna/Alamy, (interior) J Marshall-Tribaleye Images/Alamy; pg. 64 Hybrid Images/Getty Images; pg. 65 (classical, rock) OUP/Digital Vision, (Domingo) ChinaFotoPress/Getty Images, (GaGa) Tonsoffun (Mario) Rimati/Demot/Demotix/Corbis, (hip hop) dpaint/shutterstock.com, (Iglesias) Kevork Djansezian/Getty Images, (Ma) B. O'Kane/Alamy, (Peas) Ethan Miller/Getty Images for Clear Channel, (Perry) Stefan M. Prager/Redferns/Getty Images, (pop) Dunca Daniel Mihai/Alamy, (Radiohead) Andy Sheppard/Redferns via Getty Images, (Shakira) John Shearer/WireImage/Getty Images; pg. 69 (barbecue) Shelly Perry/istockphoto.com, (card) ITP Images/AGE fotostock, (chips) Jiri Hera/shutterstock.com, (chocolates) OUP/Frank Chmura, (dinner) Gary Moss Photography/Getty Images, (flowers) OUP/Photodisc, (housewarming) age fotostock/SuperStock, (party) Jon Feingersh Photography/SuperStock; pp. 70–71 Dan Grechtheroadchosome.com; pg. 74 (barbecue) OUP/Design Pics, (card) Mark Richardson/Alamy,

(chips) Paul Springett 03/Alamy, (dinner) Cavan Images/Getty Images, (drink) Yvan Dubé/istockphoto.com, (party) OUP/Corbis; pg. 75 Steven Newman The Worldwalker/www.stevennewman.com; pp. 76, 78 (Abdu) EDDY PADO/AFP/Getty Images, (Abreu) Cityfiles/ZUMA Press/Newscom, (Brooks) Judie Burstein/ZUMAPRESS.com/Newscom, (Sanz) Carlos Alvarez/Getty Images, (Thalia) STAN HONDA/AFP/Getty Images, (Utada) AP Photo/Jennifer Graylock, (Williams) Dave Hogan/Getty Images, (Wong) ChinaFotoPress via Getty Images; pg. 80 (busy) Liam Norris/Getty Images, (go out) Stockbyte/Getty Images, (relax) Wavebreak Media Ltd/Alamy, (tired) MichaelJay/istockphoto.com; pg. 83 (friends) Elena Elisseeva/shutterstock.com, (TV) OUP/Stockbyte, (wake) Andres Rodriguez/Alamy; pg. 84 OUP/Andrew Rich; pg. 85 (balloons) Norbert Eisele-Hein/AGE fotostock, (cave) Evan Spiler/Alamy, (man) Image Source/Getty Images; pg. 117 (England flag) visual7/istockphoto.com, (Portugal flag) OUP/granata111, (all other flags) OUP/Graphi-Ogre, (Brazil) Robert Harding Images/Masterfile, (Canada) Vlad Ghica/shutterstock.com, (Chile) Ocean/Corbis, (China, Peru) OUP/Photodisc, (England) OUP/Jan Tadeusz, (Japan) Keith Levit/Design Pics/Corbis, (Korea) TOPIC PHOTO AGENCY INC/AGE fotostock, (Mexico) Robert John/Alamy, (Portugal) Dariusz Majgier/Shutterstock.com, (Saudi Arabia) Abdul Rahman Al Motaw/AGE fotostock, (Spain) Axiom Photographic/Design Pics/Corbis, (USA) fotog/Tetra Images/Corbis, (Vietnam) Travel Library Limited/SuperStock; pg. 120 (boy) OUP/Juice Images, (children) Paul/F1 ONLINE/AGE fotostock, (couple) Corbis Flirt/Alamy, (family) Wavebreak Media Ltd./Corbis, (friends) Fuse/Getty Images, (girl) OUP/mike stone, (man) OUP/Image Source, (married) Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/Blend Images/Corbis, (siblings) Image Source/Getty Images, (woman) OUP/Photodisc; pg. 121 (bad, good) BKMCPphotography/shutterstock.com, (beautiful woman) Andres/shutterstock.com, (big) Alena Dvorakova/istockphoto.com, (black) Reddogs/shutterstock.com, (blue) OUP/craftvision, (brown) Simon Krzic/shutterstock.com, (cheap) OUP/Corbis, (expensive) Backyard Productions/Alamy, (fast) PhotoBeam/istockphoto.com, (green) Africa Studio/shutterstock.com, (handsome man) Goodluz/shutterstock.com, (long) michael rubin/Shutterstock.com, (new) vikky/shutterstock.com, (old) vndrptn/istockphoto.com, (orange) Sandra van der Steen/shutterstock.com, (red) jodic/shutterstock.com, (short) Bruce Benedict/TRANSTOCK/Transtock/Corbis, (slow) Blue Images/Corbis, (small) anaken2012/shutterstock.com, (tall/short) Corbis Flirt/Alamy, (white) gillmar/shutterstock.com, (yellow) Verdatoe/shutterstock.com; pg. 122 (drink) Robert Niedring/Westend61/Corbis, (eats) Big Cheese Photo/Corbis, (go) andy lane/Alamy, (have) Jun Takahashi/Getty Images, (likes) Juniors Bildarchiv GmbH/Alamy, (listen) Sudheer Sakthan/shutterstock.com, (live) Jupiterimages/Getty Images, (make) Larry Williams/AGE fotostock, (read) Yellow Dog Productions/Getty Images, (speak) Blend Images/SuperStock, (study) OUP/Image Source, (want inset) OUP/Mint Photography, (want) OUP/Cultura Creative, (watch) luiggi33/shutterstock.com, (work) Jose Luis Pelaez, Inc./Blend Images/Corbis; pg. 123 (bread, cereal, fruit) OUP/Photodisc, (butter) DustyPixel/istockphoto.com, (cheese) OUP/igor kisselev, (chocolate) Alex Kosev/shutterstock.com, (coffee) Hakan Dere/istockphoto.com, (eggs) OUP, (fish) DUSAN ZIDAR/shutterstock.com, (juice) Ermin Gutenberger/istockphoto.com, (meat) Kadir Barcin/istockphoto.com, (milk) Shebeko/shutterstock.com, (pasta) Africa Studio/shutterstock.com, (potatoes) Picsfive/shutterstock.com, (rice) OUP/Przemyslaw, (salad) OUP/Alias Studiot Oy, (sandwich) creacart/istockphoto.com, (soda) Rafa Irusta/istockphoto.com, (sugar) AntonioFoto/shutterstock.com, (tea) Ocean/Corbis, (vegetables) OUP/Stefano Tiraboschi, (water) Granquillity/shutterstock.com; pg. 124 (assistant) Lucenat Patrice/AGE fotostock, (doctor) OUP/Image Source, (factory worker, nurse) OUP/Digital Vision, (factory) OUP/Cultura, (home) Red Images, LLC/Alamy, (hospital) Apple's Eyes Studio/shutterstock.com, (lawyer) OUP/Corbis, (office) Tetra Images/Alamy, (police) Hemis.fr/SuperStock, (restaurant) OUP/BananaStock, (salesperson) Juice Images/Alamy, (school) Damir Cudic/Getty Images, (store) MBI/Alamy, (street) Lana Sundman/Alamy, (student) OUP/Photodisc, (teacher) OUP/JinYoung Lee, (waiter) Glowimages/Masterfile; pg. 126 (break) Digital Vision/Getty Images, (change) MIKE CLARKE/AFP/Getty Images, (come) i love images/Getty Images, (drive) Tim Kiusalaas/Masterfile, (golf) OUP/Brand X Pictures, (hear) Chad Johnston/Masterfile, (inside) Rubberball/Mike Kemp/Getty Images, (internet) Andres/shutterstock.com, (park) mbbirdy/istockphoto.com, (pay) Tetra Images/Getty Images, (photos) Ekaterina Pokrovsky/shutterstock.com, (piano) OUP/Brand X Pictures, (see) Michele Constantini/PhotoAlto/Corbis, (skate) Lisette Le Bon/SuperStock, (ski) Larry Prossor/SuperStock, (snowboard) OUP/Chad Riley, (sports) 4x6/istockphoto.com, (swim) Andres Rodriguez/Alamy, (visit) OUP/David Ashley, (walk) Ocean/Corbis; pg. 129 (1) OUP/Digital Vision, (2) Miks/shutterstock.com, (3) Ma Spitz/shutterstock.com, (4) Gerry Boughan/shutterstock.com, (5) André Pöhlmann/AGE fotostock, (6) Caro/Alamy, (7) Richard Levine/AGE fotostock, (8) Ocean/Corbis, (9) Anna Stowe/Alamy, (10) Daniel Koebe/Corbis, (11) Adriano Castelli/Shutterstock.com, (12) David R. Frazier Photolibrary, Inc./Alamy, (13) Jan Wachala/Alamy, (14) eyewave/istockphoto.com, (15) DuxX/istockphoto.com, (16) OUP/Photodisc, (17) Carl Purcell/Alamy, (18) Jon Way/Reuters/Corbis, (19) Tetra Images/Alamy, (20) Juice Images/Alamy; pg. 130 (call) OUP/Stockbroker, (cook) Wavebreak Media Ltd./Corbis, (find) PK-Photos/istockphotos.com, (get) Mark Edward Atkinson/Getty Images, (give) Asia Images/Masterfile, (help) David Young-Wolff/Alamy, (laugh) Henk Badenhorst/Getty Images, (leave) Simon Ladefoged/Getty Images, (look) tirc83/istockphoto.com, (lose) Ian Sanderson/Getty Images, (miss inset) OUP/Ron Chapple Stock, (miss) Ronnie Kaufman/AGE fotostock, (move) Patrick Heagney/istockphoto.com, (off, off) hardcoreboy/istockphoto.com, (take) Andrzej Tokarski/Alamy, (tell) Bruce Laurance/Getty Images, (travel) Stockbyte/Getty Images, (try) narvikk/Getty Images, (wait) incamerastock/Alamy.

Video Stills: Life in a Day courtesy of Scott Free Productions.